Grammatical Exerciſes

UPON THE

FRENCH LANGUAGE.

COMPARED WITH THE

ENGLISH:

CONTAINING

1. A Vocabulary of the French Words moſt frequently uſed.

2. An Explanation of the different Parts of Speech, followed by the Declenſion of Nouns and the Conjugation of all Verbs, regular and irregular; with Exerciſes upon them.

3. All the Rules of the Syntax, ſet in a numerical Order, with inſtructive and moral Exerciſes after each Rule; and at the End of every Chapter a recapitulatory Exerciſe upon all the Rules contained in it.

4. Uſeful Dialogues upon the Principles of the French Language.

By NICOLAS HAMEL,

AUTHOR OF A FRENCH GRAMMAR, AND SEVERAL OTHER SCHOOL BOOKS.

THE THIRD EDITION:

WITH GREAT IMPROVEMENTS.

LONDON:

Printed by S. FISHER, St. John's Lane, Clerkenwell,

FOR T. HURST, NO. 32, PATER-NOSTER ROW.

1800.

30
61
AUG

PREFACE.

SOME apology is deemed neceſſary by writers of every deſcription on introducing their labours to the public, more eſpecially when they have been preceded by others in the ſame line. If the following ſheets exhibit but little that is uſeful, or nothing that is new, the author is convinced apology would be improper, and he has laboured in vain; but ſhould they be found to ſmooth the path of inſtruction, he truſts the ſame criticiſm which awarded the meed of praiſe to his Grammar (under its imperfections), will diſcriminate the improvements he has made in the means of acquiring the French language.

It does not remain for him to point out the utility of a Book of Exerciſes; the value of this mode of teaching is already appreciated; he is leſs inclined to decry his predeceſſors, for defect is natural to man: yet, if the arrangement be obvious: the ſtyle conciſe, and clear; the examples apt; the Exerciſes moral, and properly adapted; and the manner of working them eaſily comprehended; he may preſume upon the merit of a few improvements, while he has availed himſelf of all that was uſeful in others.

The different Parts of Speech are explained with order and preciſion; Syntax is fully treated of in a ſeries of ſhort and accurate Rules, with Examples, and each is ſucceeded by a ſelected Exerciſe, entertaining and inſtructive. No rule is anticipated: the principles depend ſucceſſively on each other; and a knowledge of the preceding uſually leads to the underſtanding of thoſe which follow. Care has been taken to render the Exerciſes *progreſſively* difficult. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, &c. interſperſed through the Syntax underneath many Engliſh words, indicate the rule in which

they are explained; this kind of reference, which becomes more frequent as we proceed, will, in a ſhort time, make the ſtudent perfect maſter of his principles, and enable a man of underſtanding to learn French with very little aſſiſtance from a maſter.

To complete his taſk, and to render theſe Exerciſes worthy of the public approbation, the author has ſpared no trouble. He has found them eſſentially uſeful in the courſe of his own practice; and he truſts, from the ſolicitude with which he has conſtantly amended whatever appeared to require it, that they will greatly facilitate the progreſs of the pupil, and diminiſh the trouble of the maſter.

THE WORLD IN MINIATURE,

(Adapted for the Uſe of Schools)

By N. HAMEL.

This work gives a conciſe, but exact, inſtructive, and entertaining account of the extent, ſituation, climate, population, inhabitants, manners, cuſtoms, curioſities, &c. of the ſeveral empires, kingdoms, ſtates, and colonies of the world.

N. B. *The author convinced by daily experience, that the immediate tranſition from a Book of Exerciſe, where moſt of the French words are put under the Engliſh ſentences, to an Engliſh book, where no French words are to be found, is too abrupt and difficult for moſt ſcholars, has put many references at the bottom of every page of this work, which will greatly facilitate the tranſlation into French, and ſmooth the path of inſtruction,*

BRITISH MUSEUM 30 61 AUG

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE rapid ſale of the two firſt editions of this book, the characters given to it in public, and the many commendations it has received in private, have amply rewarded the author for all his trouble, and have ſtrongly induced him to uſe his utmoſt endeavours to render it ſtill more worthy of the public approbation, and more adapted to the capacities of youth, to whoſe inſtruction he has for many years devoted all his time and labours.

The preſent edition is greatly improved; it has received material emendations and additions. The ſecond part is entirely new: many rules in the ſyntax, which were complex, have been divided to attain perſpicuity and preciſion; the moſt eſſential rules are marked with a ☞ to attract a more particular attention; the references to the rules are more frequent, the examples rendered more eaſy to tranſlate, and the whole is executed on a plan more ſimple and better adapted to the capacities of the youngeſt learners.

N. HAMEL.

72, *Lower Sloane-Street, Chelſea.*

EXPLANATION

OF THE

MARKS AND ABBREVIATIONS

MADE USE OF IN THIS WORK.

(m. f.) . . . Denotes that the ſubſtantive is maſculine or feminine.

(*ir*) . . . . Marks a verb irregular, of which every tenſe and perſon will be found in the grammar after the regular conjugations.

(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, &c.) . . . Theſe figures have reference to the rules, which ſhew how to expreſs in French the Engliſh words under which they are placed.

(*) . . . This ſtar has two ſignifications; when it is placed after a word, it has reference to ſome obſervations made at the bottom of the page; but when it is put under an Engliſh word, it denotes that it is not to be expreſſed in French.

(☞) . . . This hand marks the rules which are the moſt eſſential, and which are to be learnt by heart.

N. B. In the following exerciſes I have put the ſubſtantives in the ſingular, the adjectives in the maſculine ſingular, and the verb in the preſent of the infinitive mood, to exerciſe the learner in putting them in their proper gender, number, and perſons, according as the caſe requires it.

BRITISH MUSEUM 30 61 AUG

GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES

UPON THE

FRENCH LANGUAGE,

COMPARED WITH THE

ENGLISH.

PART I.

FRENCH ALPHABET.

A*	B,	C,	D,	E,	F,	G,	H,	I,	J,	K,	L,
aw,	bay,	cey,	day,	a,	eff,	gey,	auſh,	e,		kaw,	el,

M,	N,	O,	P,	Q,	R,	S,	T,	U,	V,	X,	Y,
m,	n,	o,	pay,	qu,	er,	s,	tay,	u,	va,	ex,	egrec,

Z, &.
zed, &.

A VOCABULARY.

1. *Days.*

DIMANCHE,	*Sunday.*
lundi,	*monday.*
mardi,	*tueſday.*
mercrédi,	*wedneſday.*
jeudi,	*thurſday.*
vendredi,	*friday.*
ſamedi,	*ſaturday.*

2. *Months.*

janvier,	*january.*
février,	*february.*
mars,	*march.*
avril,	*april.*
mai,	*may.*
juin,	*june.*
juillet,	*july.*
aout,	*auguſt.*
ſeptembre,	*ſeptember.*
octobre,	*october.*
novembre,	*november.*
decembre,	*december.*

3. *Seaſons.*

le printems,	*ſpring.*
l'été,	*ſummer.*
l'automne,	*autumn.*
l'hiver,	*winter.*

4. *Elements.*

le feu;	*fire.*
l'eau,	*water.*
la terre,	*earth.*
l'air,	*air.*

* *Theſe letters are ſounded in French pretty near as thoſe under them are ſounded in Engliſh.*

5. *Eating.*

le déjeuner,	*breakfaſt.*
le dîner,	*dinner.*
le ſouper,	*ſupper.*
du pain,	*bread.*
de la croûte,	*cruſt.*
de la mie,	*crumb.*
du beure,	*butter.*
de la viande,	*meat.*
du rôti,	*roaſt meat.*
du bouilli,	*boiled meat.*
du beuf.	*beef.*
du veau,	*veal.*
du mouton,	*mutton.*
du porc,	*pork.*
du lard,	*bacon.*
du gras,	*fat.*
du maigre,	*lean.*
une volaille,	*a fowl.*
du gibier,	*game.*
un liévre,	*a hare.*
des perdrix,	*partridges.*
un faiſan,	*pheaſant.*
une bécaſſe,	*a woodcock.*
une bécaſſine,	*a ſnipe.*
des pigeons,	*pigeons.*
un chapon,	*a capon.*
un dindon,	*a turkey.*
un oie,	*a gooſe.*
un canard,	*a duck.*
du poiſſon,	*ſome fiſh.*
une morue,	*a cod.*
du ſaumon,	*ſalmon.*
un turbot,	*a turbot.*
un merlan,	*a whiting.*
une ſole,	*a ſole.*
un maquerau,	*a mackerel.*
un hareng,	*a herring.*
une anguille,	*an eel.*
un brochet,	*a pike.*
une plie,	*a plaice.*
une truite,	*a trout.*
une tortue,	*a turtle.*
des choux,	*cabbage.*
des navets,	*turnips.*
des carottes,	*carrots.*
des pommes de terre,	*potatoes.*
des artichauts,	*artichokes.*
des aſperges,	*aſparagus.*
des pois,	*peas.*
de la chicorée,	*ſuccory.*
des laitues,	*lettice.*
du celeri,	*celery.*
une pomme,	*an apple.*
une poire,	*a pear.*
une orange,	*an orange.*
un citron,	*a lemon.*
un abricot,	*an apricot.*
une pêche,	*a peach.*
une olive,	*an olive.*
une ceriſe,	*cherry.*
des groſeilles,	*gooſeberries.*
des fraiſes,	*ſtrawberries.*
des framboiſes,	*raſpberries.*
des noix,	*walnuts.*
du raiſin,	*a grape.*
des chataignes,	*cheſnuts, &c.*

6. *Drinking.*

du vin,	*wine.*
de la biere,	*beer.*
du cidre,	*cyder.*
de l'eau,	*water.*
du thé,	*tea.*
du caffé,	*coffee.*
du chocolat,	*chocolate.*
du cocao,	*cocoa, &c.*

7. *Things uſed at Table.*

la nappe,	*table-cloth.*
un plat,	*a diſh.*
une aſſiette,	*a plate.*
un couteau,	*a knife.*
une cueiller,	*a ſpoon.*
une fourchette,	*a fork.*
du ſel,	*ſalt.*
une ſaliere,	*ſalt-cellar.*
de la moutarde,	*muſtard.*
du poivre,	*pepper,*
du vinaigre,	*vinegar,*
un verre,	*a glaſs, &c.*

8. *Furniture of a Room.*

un lit,	*a bed.*
un matelas,	*a mattreſs.*
des draps,	*ſheets.*
une couverture,	*a blanket.*
des rideaux,	*curtains.*
une chaiſe,	*a chair.*

BRITISH MUSEUM 30 61 AUG

un tapis, *a carpet.*
un miroir, *a looking-glaſs.*
une caiſſe, *a cheſt.*
une armoire, *cheſt of drawers*
un tableau, *a picture.*
une chandelle, *a candle.*
un chandélier, *a candleſtick.*
des mouchettes, *ſnuffers.*
un livre, *a book.*
du papier, *paper.*
de l'encre, *ink.*
des plumes, *pens, &c.*

9. *Of the Body.*

le corps, *the body.*
le ſang, *the blood.*
la peau, *the ſkin.*
les os, *the bones.*
la moëlle, *the marrow.*
les veines, *the veins.*
le pouls, *the pulſe.*
les nerfs, *the nerves.*
la tête, *the head.*
le front, *the forehead.*
le viſage, *the face.*
les yeux, *the eyes.*
les paupieres, *the eye-lids.*
les ſourcils, *the eye-brows.*
le nez, *the noſe.*
les oreilles, *the ears.*
la bouche, *the mouth.*
les levres, *the lips.*
la langue, *the tongue.*
les dents, *the teeth.*
les joues, *the cheeks.*
le menton, *the chin.*
la gorge, *the throat.*
le cou, *the neck.*
l'épaule, *the ſhoulder.*
le bras, *the arm.*
la main, *the hand.*
le pouce, *the thumb.*
les doigts, *the fingers.*
le ſein, *the boſom.*
le cœur, *the heart.*
le dos, *the back.*
le ventre, *the belly.*
la ceinture, *the waiſt.*
le côté, *the ſide.*
la hanche, *the hip.*
la cuiſſe, *the thigh.*
le genou, *the knee.*
la jambe, *the leg.*
le pied, *the foot.*
le talon, *the heel, &c.*

10. *Dreſs.*

un chapeau, *a hat.*
un habit, *a coat.*
une veſte, *a waiſtcoat.*
une culotte, *breeches.*
des bas, *ſtockings.*
des ſouliers, *ſhoes.*
des boucles, *buckles.*
des bottes, *boots.*
un ruban, *a riband.*
un collier, *a necklace.*
des pendans d'oreille, *ear-rings.*
une robe, *a gown.*
une jupe, *a petticoat.*
un tablier, *an apron.*
une montre, *a watch.*
des gans, *gloves.*
un manchon, *a muff.*
un parapluie, *an umbrella.*
un mouchoir, *a handkerchief &c.*

11. *Relations.*

père, *father.*
mère, *mother.*
grand-père, *grand-father.*
grand-mère, *grand-mother.*
beau-père, *father-in-law*
belle-mère, *mother-in-law*
frère, *brother.*
ſœur, *ſiſter.*
beau-frère, *brother-in law*
belle-ſœur, *ſiſter-in-law.*
fils, *ſon.*
fille, *daughter.*
petit-fils, *grand-ſon.*
petite-fille, *grand-daught.*
parain, *god-father.*
maraine, *god-mother.*
filleul, *god-ſon.*
filleule, *god-daughter.*

époux,	*huſband.*	tailleur,	*taylor.*
épouſe,	*wife.*	tanneur,	*tanner.*
oncle,	*uncle.*	tapiſſier,	*upholſterer.*
tante,	*aunt.*	tenturier,	*dyer.*
neveu,	*nephew.*	tiſſerand,	*weaver.*
niece,	*niece.*	tonnelier,	*cooper.*
couſin,	*he-couſin.*	tourneur,	*turner.*
couſine,	*ſhe-couſin, &c.*	vitrier,	*glazier, &c.*

12. *Profeſſions.*

barbier,	*barber.*
bijoutier,	*toyman.*
boucher,	*butcher.*
boulanger,	*baker.*
braſſeur,	*brewer.*
caroſſier,	*coach-maker.*
chapelier,	*hatter.*
charpentier,	*carpenter.*
cocher,	*coachman.*
cordier,	*rope-maker.*
cordonnier,	*ſhoemaker.*
coutelier,	*cutler.*
cuiſinier,	*cook.*
doreur,	*gilder.*
drapier,	*draper.*
épicier,	*grocer.*
fayencier,	*chinaman.*
fondeur,	*founder.*
forgeron,	*blackſmith.*
horloger,	*clock-maker.*
jardinier,	*gardener.*
imprimeur,	*printer.*
jouailler,	*jeweller.*
laboureur,	*ploughman.*
libraire,	*bookſeller.*
maçon,	*bricklayer.*
meunier,	*miller.*
orfevre,	*goldſmith.*
patiſſier,	*paſtry-cook.*
peintre,	*painter.*
perruquier,	*hair-dreſſer.*
relieur,	*book-binder.*
ſavetier,	*cobler.*
ſellier,	*ſadler.*
ſerrurier,	*lockſmith.*

13. *A Series of Subſtantives* *.

Avarice, *f.*	*covetouſneſs.*
amertume, *f.*	*bitterneſs.*
ardoiſe, *f.*	*ſlate.*
aſtre, *m.*	*ſtar.*
attrait,	*charm.*
Bagatelle,	*trifle.*
bateau,	*boat.*
bataille,	*battle.*
bâton,	*ſtick.*
bonté,	*goodneſs.*
bordure,	*frame.*
boue, *f.*	*dirt.*
brouillard,	*fog.*
bruit,	*noiſe.*
butin,	*booty.*
Cabinet,	*cloſet.*
cachet,	*ſeal.*
campagne, *f.*	*country.*
caractère, *m.*	*temper.*
caroſſe, *m.*	*coach.*
chair, *f.*	*fleſh.*
chaleur,	*heat.*
chambre, *f.*	*room.*
champ,	*field.*
chanſon, *f.*	*ſong.*
charbon,	*coal.*
charue, *f.*	*plough.*
chaſſe,	*hunting.*
chaux,	*lime.*
chemin,	*road.*
chûte, *f.*	*fall.*
ciel,	*heaven.*
cire, *f.*	*wax.*
ciſeaux,	*ſciſſars.*
cloche, *f.*	*bell.*

* *The ſubſtantives not followed by* m *or* f, *are maſculine, or feminine, according as their final is maſculine or feminine; for which ſee the table of terminations,* p. 12.

clou, *nail.*
colère, *f.* *anger.*
conduite, *f.* *conduct.*
confiance, *confidence.*
corps, *body.*
cuir, *leather.*
cuivre, *m.* *copper.*
Dance, *dance.*
débat, *debate.*
débauche, *f.* *debauchery.*
défiance, *diſtruſt.*
délicateſſe, *delicacy.*
déluge, *m.* *flood.*
dépens, *expence.*
déſir, *deſire.*
dueil, *mourning.*
devoir, *duty.*
diſette, *want.*
domaine, *m.* *dominion.*
douceur, *ſweetneſs.*
durée, *duration.*
Eau, *water.*
école, *f.* *ſchool.*
écriture, *writing.*
égliſe, *f.* *church.*
énigme, *riddle.*
épine, *f.* *thorn.*
épingle, *f.* *pin.*
épreuve, *f.* *trial.*
épron, *ſpur.*
eſpérance, *hope.*
eſpion, *ſpy.*
eſquiſſe, *ſketch.*
état, *ſtate.*
étoile, *f.* *ſtar.*
étude, *f.* *ſtudy.*
évantail, *fan.*
Famille, *family.*
faute, *f.* *fault.*
femme, *woman.*
fenêtre, *f.* *window.*
fer, *iron.*
fermété, *firmneſs.*
feu, *fire.*
feuille, *leaf.*
fidelité, *faithfulneſs.*
fiévre, *f.* *fever.*
fléche, *f.* *arrow.*
fleur, *flower.*
fleuve, *m.* *river.*
foi, *f.* *faith.*
foibleſſe, *weakneſs.*
foin, *hay.*
force, *f.* *ſtrength.*
foule, *f.* *crowd.*
fromage, *cheeſe.*
fumée, *ſmoke.*
fureur, *fury.*
Gateau, *cake.*
gazon, *turf.*
gélée, *froſt.*
glace, *ice.*
gloire, *f.* *glory.*
goût, *taſte.*
graine, *f.* *ſeed.*
grandeur, *greatneſs.*
guerre, *war.*
Haine, *f.* *hatred.*
haleine, *breath.*
hardieſſe, *boldneſs.*
herbe, *f.* *graſs.*
homme, *man.*
honneur, *m.* *honour.*
honte, *f.* *ſhame.*
horloge, *f.* *clock.*
huitre, *f.* *oyſter.*
Idée, *idea.*
Impôt, *tax.*
injure, *injury.*
jour, *day.*
juge, *m.* *judge.*
juſteſſe, *exactneſs.*
Lait, *milk.*
langue, *f.* *tongue.*
lecture, *reading.*
lettre, *f.* *letter.*
lien, *tie.*
lieu, *place.*
lune, *f.* *moon.*
lunette, *ſpectacle.*
luxe, *m.* *luxury.*
Maître, *maſter.*
maladie, *illneſs.*
malheur, *m.* *misfortune.*
matin, *morning.*
mer, *f.* *ſea.*
mois, *month.*
moiſſon, *f.* *harveſt.*

moulin, *mill.*
mouvement, *motion.*
mur, *wall.*
Naiſſance, *birth.*
neige, *f.* *ſnow.*
nid, *neſt.*
nuit, *f.* *night.*
Oiſeau, *bird.*
ombre, *m.* *ſhadow.*
ongle, *f.* *nail.*
ordre, *m.* *order.*
orge, *m.* *barley.*
orgeuil, *pride.*
orient, *eaſt.*
occident, *weſt.*
Paille, *ſtraw.*
païſage, *landſcape.*
paix, *peace.*
palais, *palace.*
panier, *baſket.*
peigne, *m.* *comb.*
perfidie, *treachery.*
perte, *f.* *loſs.*
peſte, *f.* *plague.*
peuple, *m.* *people.*
pierre, *ſtone.*
pillage, *plunder.*
pitié, *pity.*
plomb, *lead.*
pluie, *rain.*
plume, *f.* *pen.*
poche, *f.* *pocket.*
poids, *weight.*
pont, *bridge.*
porte, *door.*
poudre, *powder.*
pré, *meadow.*
préſage, *omen.*
préſent, *gift.*
prix, *m.* *price.*
progrès, *progreſs.*
pudeur, *modeſty.*
Raiſon, *f.* *reaſon.*
raſoir, *raſor.*
ravage, *havock.*
rayon, *ray.*
régle, *rule.*
repas, *meal.*
réponſe, *anſwer.*
réproche, *m.* *reproach.*
rêve, *m.* *dream.*
ronce, *f.* *bramble.*
roue, *wheel.*
Sac, *bag.*
ſavon, *ſoap.*
ſerment, *oath.*
ſerrure, *lock.*
ſoir, *evening.*
ſort, *fate.*
ſoumiſſion, *ſubmiſſion.*
ſouris, *f.* *mouſe.*
ſuffrage, *vote.*
Tableau, *picture.*
tache, *f.* *blot.*
tapis, *carpet.*
témérité, *raſhneſs.*
titre, *m.* *title.*
travail, *work.*
triſteſſe, *ſadneſs.*
trou, *hole.*
troupe, *f.* *troop.*
troupeau, *flocks.*
Vaiſſeau, *ſhip.*
vent, *wind.*
ver, *worm.*
verge, *f.* *yard.*
vérité, *truth.*
vertu, *f.* *virtue.*
vie, *life.*
univers, *univerſe.*
voiſin, *neighbour.*
voix, *voice.*
voyage, *travel.*
uſage, *cuſtom.*

14. *A Series of Adjectives.*

Abſolu, *abſolute.*
affreux, *dreadful.*
aimable, *amiable.*
aiſe, *glad.*
ancien, *old.*
aſſidu, *aſſiduous.*
avide, *greedy.*
Bas, *low.*
beau, *fine.*
blanc, *white.*
bleu, *blue.*
bon, *good.*

boſſu,	*crooked.*
Chaud,	*hot.*
cher,	*dear.*
conforme,	*conformable.*
contagieux,	*contagious.*
content,	*ſatisfied.*
curieux,	*curious.*
Dédaigneux,	*diſdainful.*
dégoûtant,	*loathſome.*
déſagréable,	*unpleaſing.*
difficile,	*difficult.*
digne,	*worthy.*
douteux,	*doubtful.*
doux,	*ſweet.*
Eclatant,	*bright.*
effroyable,	*frightful.*
épais,	*thick.*
étrange,	*ſtrange.*
exquis,	*exquiſite.*
Fâcheux,	*ſad.*
facile,	*eaſy.*
fameux,	*famous.*
faux,	*falſe.*
féroce,	*fierce.*
fertile,	*fruitful.*
flatteur,	*flatterer.*
foible,	*weak.*
fort,	*ſtrong.*
frais,	*freſh.*
Généreux,	*generous.*
glorieux,	*glorious.*
gracieux,	*graceful.*
gras,	*fat.*
grand,	*great.*
gros,	*big.*
Habile,	*able.*
haut,	*high.*
heureux,	*happy.*
honnête,	*honeſt.*
honteux,	*ſhameful.*
humain,	*humane.*
Jaloux,	*jealous.*
jaune,	*yellow.*
jeune,	*young.*
illuſtre,	*illuſtrious.*
impie,	*impious.*
incrédule,	*incredulous.*
indigne,	*unworthy.*
infâme,	*infamous.*
infidel,	*unfaithful.*
injurieux,	*injurious.*
joli,	*pretty.*
juſte,	*juſt.*
Lâche,	*coward.*
large,	*broad.*
las,	*tired.*
lent,	*ſlow.*
libre,	*free.*
Mauvais,	*bad.*
mechant,	*wicked.*
mépriſable,	*contemptible.*
Neceſſaire,	*neceſſary.*
net,	*clean.*
noir,	*black.*
nombreux,	*numerous.*
neuf,	*new.*
nouveau,	*new.*
nuiſible,	*hurtful.*
Obéiſſant,	*obedient.*
odieux,	*odious.*
orageux,	*ſtormy.*
ordinaire,	*uſual.*
Parfait,	*perfect.*
perfide,	*perfidious.*
périlleux,	*perilous.*
peſant,	*heavy.*
petit,	*little.*
pieux,	*pious.*
plaintif,	*mournful.*
plein,	*full.*
poli,	*civil.*
profond,	*deep.*
prodigue,	*prodigal.*
Réel,	*real.*
regulier,	*regular.*
reſpectueux,	*reſpectful.*
rêveur,	*thoughtful.*
ruſé,	*cunning.*
Sage,	*wiſe.*
ſaint,	*holy.*
ſauvage,	*wild.*
ſec,	*dry.*
ſerieux,	*ſerious.*
ſuperflu,	*ſuperfluous.*
Tel,	*ſuch.*
témeraire,	*raſh.*
timide,	*fearful.*
tranquil,	*quiet.*

triſte, *ſad.*
Verd, *green.*
véritable, *true.*
vieux, *old.*
voluptueux, *voluptuous.*
vrai, *true.*

SOUND OF BIRDS AND BEASTS.

Les oiſeaux chantent, *birds ſing.*
le perroquet parle, *the parrot talks.*
le merle ſiffle, *the blackbird whiſtles.*
la colombe gemit, *the dove cooes.*
le coq chante, *the cock crows.*
le corbeau croaſſe, *the raven croaks.*
le cheval hennit, *the horſe neighs.*
l'âne brait, *the aſs brays.*
le beuf meugle, *the ox lows.*
le taureau mugit, *the bull roars.*
le lion rugit, *the lion roars.*
le ſerpent ſiffle, *the ſnake hiſſes,*
la brebis bêle, *the ſheep bleats.*
le chat miaule et file, *the cat mews and purs.*
le chien aboie, *the dog barks.*
le lievre crie, *the hare ſqueaks.*
le loup hurle, *the wolf howls,*

PART II.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

THERE are in French nine parts of Speech, which are called, 1. *Article.* 2. *Subſtantive.* 3. *Adjective.* 4. *Pronoun.* 5. *Verb*, declinable.——6. *Adverb.* 7. *Preposition.* 8. *Conjunction.* 9. *Interjection*, indeclinable. Of which as follows:

1. OF THE ARTICLE.

The article is a word placed before a ſubſtantive, to determine the extent of its ſignification.

There are three articles in French. 1. The definite, *le, la, les*, which is uſed before a noun taken in a particular or univerſal ſenſe. 2. The indefinite, *un* or *une*, which is uſed before a noun ſingular, taken in an indeterminate ſenſe. 3. The partitive, *du, de la, des*, which is uſed before a noun to denote a certain number or portion of a thing. They are declined as follows:

1. *Definite Article.*

	Singular.			*Plural for all.*	
	m.	*f.*	*v. b.*	*m. f.*	
N. Ac.	le,	la,	l'*	les,	*the*
G. Ab.	du,	de la,	de l'	des,	*of or from the*
D.	au,	à la,	à l'	aux,	*to the*

2. *Partitive Article.*

N. Acc.	du,	de la,	de l'	des,	*ſome*
N. Acc.	de†,	de,	d'	de,	*ſome.*

3. *Indefinite Article.*

N. Acc.	un,	une,	no plural,	*a*
G. Ab.	d'un,	d'une,		*of or from a*
D.	à un,	à une,		*to a*

* *l'* is uſed before a noun of both genders which begins with a vowel, or an *h* mute, as *l'oiſeau, l'homme*, &c.

† When a ſubſtantive taken in a partitive ſenſe is preceded by an adjective, the word *de* is always uſed inſtead of *du, de la*, or *des*; as, *du* pain, *de* bon pain; *de la* viande, *de* bonne viande, &c.

4. *Declenſion of proper Names and Pronouns.*

	Singular.			*Plural for all.*
N. Acc.	take no prepoſitions nor article before them.			
	m.	*f.*	*v.*	*pl.*
G. Ab.	de,	de,	d'	de, *prep.* of or from
D.	à,	à,	à,	à, *prep.* to

EXERCISE upon the ARTICLES and PROPER NAMES.

N. B. 1. marks the definite article. 2. The indefinite. 3. The partitive; and 4. the proper names. The *m* denotes a noun maſculine; *f* a noun feminine; *v* a noun which begins with a vowel; and *h*, a noun which begins with an *h* mute.

1. The father, of the ſon, to the brother. The mother, of
père m *fils* m *frère*, m *mère* f
the daughter, to the ſiſter. The child, of the angel, to the
fille f *ſœur* f *enfant* v *ange* v
ſoul. The man, of the hiſtory, to the harmony. The gar-
âme v *homme* h *hiſtoire* h *harmonie* h *jar-*
dens, of the houſes, to the friends. The maſter of the houſe
dins pl *maiſons* pl *amis* pl *maître* m *maiſon* f
is gone to town. Send the child to ſchool. Life of man
eſt allé à la ville f *envoyez enfant* v *école* v. *vie* f *homme*
is ſhort. Give the apple to the boy, and the orange to the
eſt courte donnez pomme f *garçon* m f. v.
girl. Light is the emanation of the rays of the ſun. The
fille f *lumière* f *eſt* f v *rayons ſoleil*, m
horror of vice, and the love of virtue, are the delight of the
horreur h *vice* m *amour* v *vertu* f *délices* pl
wiſe. The admiral ſpeaks to the king, to the queen, and
ſage m *amiral* v *roi* m *reine* f
to the princes. The city of London has given a ſword
princes pl *cité* f *de Londres a donné une epée*
to the general of the army. The moon is the cauſe of the
général m *armée* v *lune* f f
eclipſes of the ſun. Let us prefer honour to intereſt.
pl *ſoleil* m. *préférons honneur* h *intérêt* v

2. Give me ſome bread and ſome butter, ſome meat and
donnez-moi pain m *et beure* m *viande* f
ſome muſtard, ſome eggs and ſome oranges. Give me ſome
moutarde f *œufs* pl pl *donnez-moi*
good bread, and ſome good butter, ſome good meat, and ſome
bon bon bonne
good muſtard; ſome good eggs and ſome good apples. I
bonne bons bonnes pommes j'
have ſome ink and ſome pens. I have bad ink and bad pens.
ai encre v. *plume mauvaiſe* pl

3. I have a dictionary and a grammar. He ſpeaks of a
j'ai dictionaire m *grammaire* f *il parle*
maſter for me, and of a miſtreſs for my ſiſter. He gives
maître m *pour moi* *maîtreſſe* *ma ſœur.* *il donne*
a watch to a young man, and a diamond to a young girl.
montre f *jeune homme* f *diamant* m *jeune fille*
There is a bird and a cage; a houſe, of a garden, to a tree,
voilà *oiſeau* m f *maiſon* f *jardin* m *arbre* v
from a pear.
poire f

4. Homer and Virgil are the princes of poets. The
Homère h *Virgile ſont* pl. *poëtes* pl.
courage of Achilles, the valour of Diomedes, the love of
m *valeur* f *amour* v
Helen, and the fidelity of Penelope are celebrated in the
Helène h *fidelité* f *ſont célébres* *dans*
writings of Homer. You go to Paris, and I to London;
écrits *h* *vous allez* *moi* *Londres*
he comes from Wincheſter, we will go to Dover, and from
il vient *nous irons* *Douvres*
Dover to Calais.

2. OF SUBSTANTIVES.

A ſubſtantive is the name of a perſon or a thing; as *un homme*, a man; *une maiſon*, a houſe; *une penſée*, a thought.

A ſubſtantive is ſingular or plural. It is ſingular, when we ſpeak of one perſon or thing, as *un livre*, a book; *un cheval*, a horſe. It is plural, when we ſpeak of more than one, as *deux livres*, two books; *trois chevaux*, three horſes.

Nouns are maſculine or feminine. Their gender may be known by the following rule and terminations, which are very uſeful, and ſhould be learnt by heart.

How to diſtinguiſh when a Noun is maſculine or feminine.

A general rule.—Among the living creatures, the males are of the maſculine gender, and the females of the feminine. Thus *un homme*, *un bœuf*, *un coq*, &c. a man, an ox, a cock, are maſculine; and *une femme*, *une vache*, *une poule*, &c. a woman, a cow, a hen, are feminine.

We muſt except from this rule, the reptiles, inſects, fiſhes, and many wild birds and beaſts, whoſe males and females are both maſculine in French, or both feminine. Thus for inſtance, *une morue* a cod, *une mouche* a fly, *une hirondelle* a ſwallow, are both males and females of the feminine gender; and *un ſaumon* a ſalmon, *un ſerpent* a ſnake, *un moineau* a ſparrow, are males and females of the maſculine gender. Their gender, like that of inanimate objects, is known by the termination of their names, as follows:

Maſculine terminations.

1.* All nouns which end in a conſonant, and have any other final than *x*, *eur*, *ion*, and *ſon*, are maſculine; alſo the words ending in

a	*as*	un opéra
é acc.	not preceded by *t*	
	as	un pré
2. i		un oubli
o		un écho
3. u		un chapeau
4. age		un payſage
ege		une piége
uge		le déluge
acle		un obſtacle
aire		le vulgaire
aume		un royaume
5. ême		un diadême
isme		un ſophiſme
ôme		un atôme
6. oire		un oratoire
all trees		un chêne
all adjectives uſed.		ſubſtantively

Exceptions to the maſculine.

1.* La brébis, la chair, la clef, la cour, la cuiller, la dent, la dot; la façon, la faim, la fin, la forêt, la leçon, la main, la mort, la nef, la nuit, la part, la rançon, la ſoif, la ſouris, la tour, la vis.

2. la foi, la fourmi, la loi, la merci.

3. l'eau, la glu, la peau, la tribu, la vertu.

4. la cage, l'image, la page, la rage.

5. la crême.

6. la gloire, l'hiſtoire, la memoire, la nageoire, la paſſoire, une poire.

N.B. The words which end in a, é, o, ege, uge, acle, aire, aume, iſme, ôme, are all maſculine, without any exception.

Feminine terminations.

1.* All nouns which end in *x*, *eur*, *ion*, and *ſon*, are feminine; alſo thoſe which end in

2. ée		une armée
3. té acc		la bonté
4. ie		la vie
5. ace		la grace
ance		l'eſpérance
6. ence		la patience
ade		la promenade
7. ude		la ſervitude
8. ière		la rivière
9. ure		une bleſſure
10. lle		la chandelle
mme		une pomme
nne		la canne
rre		la terre
11. ſſe		la chaſſe
tte		la patte

Exceptions to the feminine.

1.* *x*: le choix, le crucifix, le flux, le reflux, le prix, le ſtyx. *eur*: le bonheur, le cœur, le deſhonneur, l'honneur, le malheur. *ion*: le croupion, le lampion, un million. *ſon*: le poiſon, le tiſon, le blazon, l'horizon, le gazon.

2. un athée, un mauſolée, un tropheé.

3. un comité, un conté, le côté, l'été, un pâté, un traité; le thé.

4. le foie, le genie, un incendie, un parapluie.

5. un eſpace.

6. le ſilence.

7. le prélude.

8. le cimetière, le lière, le derrière.

9. un augure, du beure, le mercure, le murmure, le parjure.

10. un codicille, un chevrefeville, un intervalle, un libelle

11. le caroſſe, le coloſſe, le parnaſſe.

EXERCISE upon the GENDER of NOUNS.

The rules upon the articles muſt be applied here; that is to ſay, the articles muſt be uſed, and agree with their ſubſtantives in genders, numbers and caſes.

Prefer virtue to riches, friendſhip to money, and utility to
préférez vertu f *richeſſes amitié* v *argent* v *utile* v
pleaſure. Education is to the mind what neatneſs is to the
plaiſir. eſt eſprit ceque proprété eſt
body. Life is ſhort. Humility is the baſis of all chriſtian
corps. vie courte humilité baſe f *toutes vertus*
virtues. Light is an emanation of the rays of the ſun.
chrétiennes lumière émanation rayons. ſoleil
Pride is often the effect of ignorance. Hiſtory is the picture
orgueil ſouvent effet ignorance hiſtoire tableau
of times, the image of inconſtancy, and variations. The
tems image inconſtance et des variations
ſimplicity of nature is more amiable than all the embelliſhments
ſimplicité nature plus aimable que tous embelliſſemens
of art. Geography is the deſcription of the earth. The eaſt,
géographie terre orient
the weſt, the ſouth, and the north are the four cardinal points.
occident midi nord ſont quatre points cardinaux
Hope, pride, ignorance, and preſumption are the four-
espérance orgueil ignorance préſomption ſont
ces of enthuſiaſm. Gaming is the ruin of youth. Honour
anthouſiaſme. jeu ruine f *jeuneſſe honneur*
and glory incite to courage and virtue. The genius of the
gloire f *excitent courage et à la vertu génie* m
French language conſiſts in clearneſs, purity, elegance, and
langue françoiſe f *conſiſte dans clarté pureté élégance,*
ſtrength. Fire, air, earth, and water are the four elements.
force f *feu air terre eau ſont quatre élemens*
Eloquence, painting, ſculpture, and poetry belong to the
éloquence peinture ſculpture poëſie appartiennent
imagination. Secrecy is the key of prudence, and the ſanctuary
imagination sécret clef f *prudence ſanctuaire* m
of wiſdom. Honour is the reward of virtue. Patience and
ſageſſe honneur récompenſe vertu f *patience*
perſeverance are neceſſary to man. Tranquillity of the ſoul
perſéverance ſont néceſſaires tranquillité âme
is the height of felicity on the earth. The fate of nations is
comble m *felicité ſur terre ſort nations* pl
governed by the providence of God.
gouverné par providence de Dieu

Of ADJECTIVES.

An adjective expreſſes the quality of a perſon or a thing. Such are *grand*, great; *bon*, good; *mauvais*, wicked; petit, *little*. An adjective is always joined or relative to a ſubſtantive or a pronoun.

As the adjectives agree in French with their ſubſtantives, they have alſo two genders and numbers. They form their feminine from the maſculine, and the plural from the ſingular, after the following directions.

How to form the Feminine of Adjectives.

The adjectives become feminine, by changing their maſculine terminations, as follows:

	maſc.	*fem.*		*maſc.*	*fem.*
	é acc into eé		as	aimé	aimée
	e *mute*	alike		ſage	ſage
1. *	i	ie		poli	polie
	u	ue		abſolu	abſolue
2.	c	che		blanc	blanche
	f	ve		actif	active
	el	elle		cruel	cruelle
	eil	eille		pareil	pareille
	ul	ulle		nul	nulle
	an	anne		payſan	payſanne
	ien	ienne		ancien	ancienne
	on	onne		bon	bonne
3.	ais	aiſſe		épais	épaiſſe
	as	aſſe		gras	graſſe
	os	oſſe		gros	groſſe
4.	et	ette		net	nette
	ot	otte		ſot	ſotte
5.	eur	euſe		chanteur	chanteuſe
	eux	euſe		heureux	heureuſe
	eau	elle		beau	belle
	ou	olle		fou	folle
	aux	auſſe		faux	fauſſe

6. The adjectives of all others final take an *e* mute for the feminine, as

petit	petite	grand	grande

EXCEPTIONS.

1. * *favori* makes *favorite* in the feminine gender.

2. *caduc, grec, public, turc*, make in the feminine *caduque, greque, publique, turque*.

3. *mauvais, ras, frais*, make in the feminine *mauvaiſe, raſe, fraiche*.

4. *complet, diſcret, inquiet, replet, sécret,* and *devot* make in the feminine *complete, diſcrète, inquiète, replète, ſecrète, devote.*

5. Some of the verbal adjectives change the final *eur* into *ereſſe*; as *enchanteur, enchantereſſe*; *pécheur, péchereſſe*; *vengeur, vengereſſe.* The adjectives ending in *eur* take an *e* for the feminine, when they are not derived from verbs; as *intérieur, intérieure*; *majeur, majeure.*

6. *doux, roux, vieux, malin, benin, tiers* make in the feminine *douce, rouſſe, vielle, maligne, benigne, tierce.*

N. B. *beau, nouveau, ſou, mou, vieux* make in the maſculine *bel, nouvel, fol, mol, viel,* when the next nouns begins with a vowel or an *h* mute. It is from that final they form their feminine, by adding *le* to *it*; as *nouvel, nouvelle*; *bel* m, *belle* f; *viel* m, *vielle* f

EXERCISE upon the FORMATION of the FEMININE of ADJECTIVES.

N.B. The adjectives which muſt go in French after the ſubſtantives have the laſt letter in Italic. –

A good man, a good woman, a great garden, a great houſe,
bon homme m *femme* f *grand jardin* m *maiſon* f
a white handkerchief, a white gown, a new hat, a new
blanc mouchoir m *robe* f *neuf chapeau* m
waiſtcoat, an attentive boy, an attentive girl, a fat ox, a fat
veſte f *attentif garçon* *fille* *gras beuf* m.
cow, an ambitious project, an ambitious woman, a cruel
vache f *ambitieux projet* m *femme* f *cruel*
father, a cruel mother, a bitter fruit, a bitter apple, a con-
père *mère* m *amer fruit* m *pomme* f *con-*
ſtant friend, a conſtant reſolution, an elegant ſpeech, an ele-
ſtant ami m *réſolution* f *élégant diſcour* m
gant lady, a figurative ſenſe, a figurative expreſſion, a frugal
dame f *figuratif ſens* m *expreſſion* f *frugal*
dinner, a frugal life, ſome cold beef, ſome cold meat, a war-
diner m *vie* f *froid beuf* m *viande* f *guer-*
like people, a warlike nation, a long diſcourſe, a long period,
rier peuple m *nation* f *long diſcour* m *phraſe* f
a natural ſtyle, a natural inclination, the public intereſt, the
naturel ſtyle m *inclination* f *interêt* m
public opinion, a ſpecious pretence, a ſpecious anſwer, a
opinion f *ſpécieux prétexte* m *réponſe* f
high wall, a high tower, a pretty boy, a pretty girl, a long
haut mur *tour* f *joli garçon* *fille* *long*
ſpeech, a long ſtreet, a pernicious game, a pernicious company.
diſcour *rue* f *pernicieux jeu* m *compagnie* f

How to form the Plural of Subſtantives and Adjectives.

The ſubſtantives and adjectives form their plural from the ſingular, by changing their final as follows:

	ſingular.	*plural.*		*ſingular.*	*plural.*
	e *into*	es	*as*	ſage	ſages
	al	aux		cheval	chevaux
1. *	ail	aux		travail	travaux
	au	aux		beau	beaux
	eu	eux		jeu	jeux
2.	ou	oux		chou	choux
3.	nt	ns		prudent	prudens
	s	*alike*		le fils	les fils
	x			la voix	les voix
	z			le nez	les nez

4. All other finals take an *s* for the plural; as
bon bons petit petits.

N.B. The plural maſculine of adjectives is formed from the ſingular maſculine; and the plural feminine from the ſingular feminine; as *grand, grands*; *grande, grandes*; *beau, beaux*; *belle, belles*.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. * *attirail, détail, éventail, gouvernail* and *ſérail* take an *s* for the plural.

2. *Trou, cou, fou, hibou*, and *licou* take an *s* for the plural.

3. The words of one ſyllable only take an *s*; as, *pont, dent*, ſingular; *ponts, dents*, plural.

4. *ayeul* makes *ayeux*; *ciel, cieux*; *oeil, yeux*; *cent, cens*; *tout, tous*.

EXERCISE upon the PLURAL of SUBSTANTIVES and ADJECTIVES.

Remember to apply in this exerciſe the rules for the articles, and for the feminine of adjectives, as well as for their plural; and in every exerciſe, the rules which precede muſt be applied.

A harmonious concert, two harmonious concerts; an harmonious voice, three harmonious voices; a white horſe, four white horſes; a white houſe, five white houſes. Your brother is prudent and wiſe, your brothers are prudent and wiſe; your ſiſter is prudent and wiſe; your ſiſters are prudent and

harmonieux concert m *deux* *voix* f *trois* *blanc cheval* m *quatre* *maiſon* f *cinq* *votre frère* *prudent et ſage vos ſont* *votre ſœur* *vos ſont*

wiſe. A pretty picture, a pretty girl; two pretty pictures,
joli tableau m *fille* f *deux*
two pretty girls. The Engliſh general is brave and cou-
anglois général eſt brave cou-
rageous; the Engliſh generals are brave and courageous; our
rageux ſont notre
army is brave and courageous, our armies are brave and cou-
armée f *nos ſont*
rageous. Your ſon is young and handſome, your ſons are
votre fils jeune beau vos fils
young and handſome; your daughter is young and handſome,
fille
your daughters are young and handſome. This book is
vos ſont ce livre m
new, theſe books are new; this table is new, theſe tables are
neuf ces ſont cette table f *ces ſont*
new. My uncle is rich and generous, my uncles are rich and
mon oncle riche généreux mes ſont
generous; my aunt is rich and generous, my aunts are rich
ma tante f *mes ſont*
and generous. Give me a ſmall knife, and a ſmall fork;
donnez-moi petit couteau m *fourchette* f
give me two ſmall knives, and two ſmall forks. This animal
donnez-moi cet animal m
is cruel and revengeful, theſe animals are cruel and revenge-
cruel vendicatif ces ſont
ful; this beaſt is cruel and revengeful, theſe beaſts are cruel
cette bête f *ces ſont*
and revengeful. Our love is mutual, our ſentiments are
notre amour m *mutuel nos ſentiments*
mutual; our fear is mutual, our fears are mutual. I have a
notre crainte f *nos ſont j'ai*
good fire in my room, I have two good fires in my houſe.
feu m *chambre* f *deux ma maiſon*

1. OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The perſonal pronouns are uſed for the names of perſons, and to avoid a repetition, which would be tedious.

They are called conjunctive, when they are the nominative or the object of the verb; as *I love him*. *I* is the nominative, and *him* the object of the verb *love*. They are called disjunctive, when they come after an interrogation, a conjunction, or a prepoſition; as, *do that for* me.

Theſe pronouns are the ſame in Engliſh whether they are conjunctive or disjunctive; but they are very different in French, and therefore muſt be carefully diſtinguiſhed.

Declenſion of the Conjunctive Perſonal Pronouns.

N.		G.		D.		Acc.	
je	*I*	en	*of me*	me	*to me*	me	*me*
tu	*thou*	en	*of thee*	te	*to thee*	te	*thee*
il	*he*	en	*of him*	lui	*to him*	le	*him*
elle	*ſhe*	en	*of her*	lui	*to her*	la	*her*
nous	*we*	en	*of us*	nous	*to us*	nous	*us*
vous	*you*	en	*of you*	vous	*to you*	vous	*you*
ils	*they*	en	*of them*	leur	*to them*	les	*them*
elles	*they*	en	*of them*	leur	*to them*	les	*them*

Declenſion of the Diſjunctive Perſonal Pronouns.

N.		G.		D.		Acc.	
moi	*I*	de moi	*of me*	à moi	*to me*	moi	*me*
toi	*thou*	de toi	*of thee*	à toi	*to thee*	toi	*thee*
lui	*he*	de lui	*of him*	à lui	*to him*	lui	*him*
elle	*ſhe*	d'elle	*of her*	à elle	*to her*	elle	*her*
nous	*we*	de nous	*of us*	à nous	*to us*	nous	*us*
vous	*you*	de vous	*of you*	à vous	*to you*	vous	*you*
eux	*they*	d'eux	*of them*	à eux	*to them*	eux	*them*
elles	*they*	d'elles	*of them*	à elles	*to them*	elles	*them*

N. B. The conjunctive pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles* go always before the verb of which they are the nominative caſe, except in an interrogative ſentence, when they go after; ex. *je parle*, I ſpeak; *parlez-vous?* do you ſpeak?

If the perſonal pronouns are in the genitive, dative, or accuſative, they always go immediately before the verb they are governed by, or before its auxiliary; ex. *je* les *connois*, I know them; *je* les *ai connu*, I have known them. If, however, the verb was in the imperative affirmative, the governed pronouns ſhould go after it; ex. *voyez-les, parlez-lui*, ſee them, ſpeak to him. The diſjunctive pronouns are put in the ſame place in French as they are in Engliſh, and require no explanation.

2. OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The poſſeſſive pronouns denote the poſſeſſion, and particulariſe the ſubſtantive to which they have reference. They are called conjunctive when they come before a ſubſtantive; and diſjunctive when they refer to a ſubſtantive antecedent. The firſt take the preposition *de* in the genitive caſe, and *à* in the dative; the ſecond are declined with the definite article *le, la, les*, in the nominative and accuſative; *du, de la, des* in the genitive; and *au, à la, aux* in the dative, like a ſubſtantive. Both are declinable, and agree in gender and number with the noun to which they are joined or relative. They are as follows.

Conjunctive Poſſeſſive Pronouns.

Singular.		*Plural.*		
m.	*f.*	*m.*	*f.*	
mon	ma	mes		*my*
ton	ta	tes		*thy*
ſon	ſa	ſes	*alike*	*his her, its*
notre	*alike*	nos		*our*
votre		vos		*your*
leur		leurs		*their*

Disjunctive Poſſeſſive Pronouns.

le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes,	*mine*
le tien	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes	*thine*
le ſien	la ſienne	les ſiens	les ſiennes	*his hers its*
le nôtre	la nôtre	les nôtres	*alike*	*ours*
le vôtre	la vôtre	les vôtres		*yours*
le leur	la leur	les leurs		*theirs*

3. OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The demonſtrative pronouns denote preciſely, and, as if it were, point to the eye, the perſon or thing ſpoken of. They are the following:

	Singular.		*Plural.*		
	m.	*f.*	*m.*	*f.*	
1. *	ce, cet	cette, *this, that*	ces	ces	*theſe, thoſe*
2.	celui	celle *that*	ceux	celles	*thoſe*
3.	celui-ci	celle-ci *this*	ceux-ci	celles-ci	*theſe*
	celui-là	celle-là *that*	ceux-là	celles-là	*thoſe*

4. ceci, *m. this*; cela, *m. that*. They are uſed as follows:

1. * The pronoun *ce* is uſed before a ſubſtantive maſculine when it begins with a conſonant, and *cet* when it begins with a vowel or an *h* mute; as *ce* jardin, *cet* oiſeau, *cet* homme.

2. *celui, celle,* &c. are uſed for *that* and *thoſe*, followed by a genitive caſe, or a relative pronoun; as, *ce livre vaut mieux que* celui *de mon frère*, this book is better than *that of* my brother.

3. When we have ſpoken of ſeveral objects, *celui-ci*, or *celle-ci* are uſed with reference to the laſt; and *celui-là*, or *celle-là*, to the former; as, *le vice et la vertu ont des effets contraires*; celle-ci *rend l'homme heureux, et* celui-là *le rend malheureux.*

4. *ceci* and *cela* are uſed to ſhow ſome particular object, without naming it; as, *donnez-moi* ceci, et *gardez* cela *pour vous*; give me *this*, and keep *that* for you.

N.B. Theſe pronouns agree in gender and number with the

ſubſtantive to which they are joined or relative. They take the preposition *de* for the genitive caſe, and *à* for the dative.

4. OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The relative pronouns have a particular reference to the noun to which they belong, and come immediately after it in French. They are as follows:

Pronouns relative to Perſons.

	Singular.		*Plural.*
	m. f.		
N.	qui		*who*
G.	de qui	dont	*whoſe, of whom*
D.	à qui		*to whom*
Acc.	que		*whom*

Pronouns relative to Animals and Things.

	m. f.	*m.*	*f.*	*m. f.*	*m.*	*f.*
N.	qui	lequel	laquelle	qui	leſquels	leſquelles *which*
G.	dont	duquel	de laquelle	dont	deſquels	deſquelles *of which*
D.		auquel	à laquelle		auxquels	auxquelles *to which*
Acc.	que	lequel	laquelle	que	leſquels	leſquelles *which*

N. B. *qui* is uſed in the nominative, *dont* in the genitive, and *que* in the accuſative, for both genders and numbers of all ſorts of objects; as, *l'homme* qui *lit*, *le cheval* qui *paît*, *le livre* qui *eſt ſur la table*, nom.—*l'homme* dont *vous parlez*, *le cheval* dont *vous parlez*, *le livre* dont *vous parlez*, gen.—*l'homme* que *je vois*, *le cheval* que *je vois*, *le livre* que *je vois*, acc.

5. OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The interrogative pronouns are uſed to aſk queſtions, and have reference to a noun mentioned in the anſwer; as, *qui eſt là?—votre frère.* They are the following:

	With reference to perſons.		*With reference to things.*	
N.	qui	*who?*	*wanting.*	
G.	de qui	*of whom?*	de quoi	*of what?*
D.	à qui	*to whom?*	à quoi	*to what?*
Acc.	qui	*whom?*	que	*what?*

With reference to Perſons and Things.

	Singular.		*Plural.*		
	m.	*f.*	*m.*	*f.*	
N. Acc.	quel	quelle	quels	quelles	*what?*
G.	de quel	de quelle	de quels	de quelles	*of what?*
D.	à quel	à quelle	à quels	à quelles	*to what?*

With reference to Perſons and Things.

N. Acc.	lequel	laquelle	leſquels	leſquelles	*which?*
G.	duquel	de laquelle	deſquels	deſquelles	*of which*
D.	auquel	à laquelle	auxquels	auxquelles	*to which*

N.B. *what* is expreſſed by *quoi* when it ſignifies *what thing*; and by *quel* or *quelle* before a ſubſtantive; as, je ſais en *quoi* vous êtes coupable, I know in *what* you are guilty. *Quel* livre liſez-vous, *what* book do you read?

6. OF INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

The indeterminate pronouns are ſo called, becauſe they expreſs a vague and indeterminate object. They are the following:

on *	*one's ſelf*	quiconque	*whoever*
le même	*the ſame*	l'un l'autre	*one another*
pluſieurs	*many, ſeveral*	l'un et l'autre	*both*
autres	*others*	l'un ou l'autre	*either*
quelqu'un	*ſomebody*	ni l'un ni l'autre	*neither*
chacun	*every body*	aucun	*none*
tout	*every thing*	perſonne	*nobody*
tout ce qui	*whatever*	rien	*nothing*

* *on* makes *de ſoi* in the genitive, *à ſoi* in the dative, and *ſoi* after a prepoſition; all other pronouns take the prepoſition *de* for the genitive, and *à* for the dative; as *rien, de rien, à rien.*

EXERCISE upon the PRONOUNS.

N.B. I put a *c* under the pronoun when it is conjunctive, and a *d* when it is disjunctive. When the perſonal pronouns are conjunctive, they go before the verb in French, though they are put after it in Engliſh.

1. *Perſonal.*—I ſpeak, who ſpeak? I; he reads, who
c *parle* *qui parle* d c *lit* *qui*
reads? he; they dance, who dance? they; he ſpeaks to me,
lit d c *danſent* *qui danſe* d c d
he and his brother ſpeak againſt me; they love me; you
d *et* *ſon frère* *parlent contre* d c *aiment* c c

know them; you ſpeak to him, you ſpeak of them, you
connoiſſez les c c *parlez* c c d c
ſpeak againſt them; we love you, we reſpect them, we reſpect
contre d c *aimons* c c *reſpectons* c c *reſpectons*
him; he ſpeaks to you and to me; he ſpeaks to him and to her.
c c *parle* d *et* d c d *et* d

2. *Poſſeſſive.*—My brother, my ſiſter; my brothers, my
frère m *ſœur* f
ſiſters; of my garden, of my houſe, of my books; of my
jardin m *maiſon* f *livres* pl
tables; to my country, to my nation, to my horſes, to my
tables pl *pays* m *nation* f *chevaux* pl
cows; his maſter, his miſtreſs; of his pleaſure, to his duty;
vaches pl *maître* m *maîtreſſe* f *plaiſir* m *devoir* m
our friend; of your picture, to their room, of our cloſet, to
ami *tableau* m *chambre* *cabinet*
your bed, of their enemies.
lit *ennemis* pl

3. *Demonſtrative.*—This wine is good, that beer is good;
vin m *eſt bon* *bierre* f
that man is learned, that woman is learned; theſe apples are
homme ſavant *femme* *pommes ſont*
ripe; do not ſpeak of that child, do not ſpeak of that girl; of
mures ne parlez pas *enfant* m *fille* f
theſe pens, to theſe books; this bird; of that cage, to that
plumes pl *livres* pl *oiſeau* m *cage* f
country; theſe arms, of theſe ſoldiers, to thoſe armies; give
pays m *armes* pl *ſoldats* pl *armées* pl *donnez-*
me this or that; do not do that.
moi *ou* *ne faites pas*

As the other pronouns cannot be applied but in ſentences too difficult for beginners, the exerciſes upon them will be found in the ſyntax, rule 79, and following.

OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

Inf. Avoir, *to have.* *Ger.* ayant, *having.* *Part.* eu, *had.*

1.* J'ai, as, a; avons, avez, ont.
2. J'avois, avois, avoit; avions, aviez, avoient.

* *The number* 1. *denotes the preſent of the indicative tenſe,* 2. *the imperfect,* 3. *the preterite,* 4. *the future,* 5. *the conditional,* 6. *the preſent of the ſubjunctive,* 7. *the preterite, and* 8. *the imperative.*

3.	J'eus,	eus,	eût;	eûmes,	eûtez,	eûrent.
4.	J'aurai,	auras,	aura;	aurons,	aurez,	auront.
5.	J'aurois,	aurois,	auroit;	aurions,	auriez,	auroient.
6.	J'aie,	aies,	ait;	ayons,	ayez,	aient.
7.	J'euſſe	euſſes,	ût;	euſſions,	euſſiez,	euſſent.
8.		aies,	ait;	ayons,	ayez,	aient.

Inf. être, *to be.* *G.* étant, *being.* *P.* été, *been.*

1.	Je ſuis,	es,	eſt;	ſommes,	êtes,	ſont.
2.	J'étois,	étois,	étoit;	étions,	étiez,	étoient.
3.	Je fus,	fus,	fût;	fûmes,	fûtes,	fûrent.
4.	Je ſerai,	ſeras,	ſera;	ſerons,	ſerez,	ſeront.
5.	Je ſerois,	ſerois,	ſeroit;	ſerions,	ſeriez,	ſeroient.
6.	Je ſois,	ſois,	ſoit;	ſoyons,	ſoyez,	ſoient.
7.	Je fuſſe,	fuſſes,	fût;	fuſſions,	fuſſiez,	fuſſent.
8.		ſois,	ſoit;	ſoyons,	ſoyez,	ſoient.

THE TEN REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

1. *Parler*, to ſpeak. *G.* parlant. *Part.* parlé*.

	Singular.				*Plural.*	
1.	Je parl -e,	es,	e;	ons,	ez,	ent.
2.	Je parl -ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
3.	Je parl -ai,	as,	a;	âmes,	âtez,	êrent.
4.	Je parle -rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
5.	Je parle -rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
6.	Je parl -e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
7.	Je parl -aſſe,	aſſes,	ât;	aſſions,	aſſiez,	aſſent.
8.	- parl -e,	e;		ons,	ez,	ent.

2. **Agir**, *to act.* *G.* agiſſant. *P.* agi.

1.	J'ag -is,	is,	it;	iſſons,	iſſez,	iſſent.
2.	J'agiſſ -ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
3.	J'ag -is,	is,	ît;	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
4.	J'agi -rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
5.	J'agi -rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
6.	J'ag -iſſe,	iſſes,	iſſe;	iſſions,	iſſiez,	iſſent.
7.	J'agi -iſſe,	iſſes,	ît;	iſſions,	iſſiez,	iſſent.
8.	- ag -is,	iſſe;		iſſons,	iſſez,	iſſent.

* *The pupil muſt repeat the Engliſh words, which anſwer to every tenſe and perſon of the French verbs. This will be an eaſy taſk, if he remembers, that* to *is the mark of the infinitive,* did, *of the imperfect,* ſhall *or* will, *of the future,* would, could, *or* ſhould, *of the conditional,* may, *of the preſent of the ſubjunctive,* might, *of the preterite, and* let, *of the imperative.*

3. Sentir, *to ſmell.* *G.* ſentant. *P.* ſenti.

		Plural.				*Plural.*	
1.	Je ſen	-s,	s,	t;	tons,	tes,	tent.
2.	Je ſen	-tois,	tois,	toit;	tions,	tiez,	toient.
3.	Je ſen	-tis,	tis,	tit;	tîmes,	tîtes,	îrent.
4.	Je ſenti	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
5.	Je ſenti	-rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
6.	Je ſent	-e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
7.	Je ſent	-iſſe,	iſſes,	ît;	iſſions,	iſſiez,	iſſent.
8.	-	ſen	-ts,	te;	tons,	tez,	tent.

4. Tenir, *to hold.* *G.* tenant. *P.* *tenu.*

1.	Je t	-iens,	iens,	ient;	enons,	enez,	iennent.
2.	Je ten	-ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
3.	Je t	-ins,	ins,	int;	înmes,	întez,	înrent.
4.	Je tiend	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
5.	Je tiend	-rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
6.	Je t	-ienne,	iennes,	ienne;	enions,	eniez,	iennent.
7.	Je t	-inſſe,	inſſes,	înt;	inſſions,	inſſiez,	inſſent.
8.	-	t	iens,	ienne;	enons,	enez,	iennent.

5. Recevoir, *to receive.* *G.* recevant. *P.* reçu.

1.	Je reç	-ois,	ois,	oit;	evons,	evez,	oivent.
2.	Je recev	-ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
3.	Je reç	-us,	us,	ut;	ûmes,	ûtes,	ûrent.
4.	Je recev	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
5.	Je recev	-rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
6.	Je reç	-oive,	oives,	oive;	evions,	eviez,	oivent.
7.	Je reç	-uſſe,	uſſes,	ût;	uſſions,	uſſiez,	uſſent.
8.	-	reç	-ois,	oive;	evons,	evez,	oivent.

6. Faire, *to do.* *G.* faiſant. *P.* *fait.*

1.	Je fai	-s,	s,	t;	ſons,	tes,	font.
2.	Je faiſ	-ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
3.	Je f	-is,	is,	it;	îmes,	îtes,	îrent.
4.	Je fe	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
5.	Je fe	-rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
6.	Je faſſ	-e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
7.	Je f	-iſſe,	iſſes,	ît;	iſſions,	iſſiez,	iſſent.
8.	-	fa	-is,	ſſe;	iſons,	ites,	ſſent.

7. Craindre, *to fear.* *G.* craignant. *P.* craint.

1.	Je crai	-ns,	ns,	nt;	gnons,	gnez,	gnent.
2.	Je craign	-ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
3.	Je craign	-is,	is,	it;	îmes,	îtes,	îrent.
4.	Je craind	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.

	Singular.				*Plural.*		
5.	Je craind	-rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
6.	Je craign	-e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
7.	Je craign	-iſſe,	iſſes,	ît;	iſſions,	iſſiez,	iſſent.
8.	-	crai	-ns,	gne;	gnons,	gnez,	gnent.

8. Connoître, *to know.* G. connoiſſant. P. connu.

1.	Je connoi	-s,	s,	t;	ſſons,	ſſez,	ſſent.
2.	Je connoiſſ	-ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
3.	Je conn	-us,	us,	ut;	ûmes,	ûtes,	ûrent.
4.	Je connoît	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
5.	Je connoît	-rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
6.	Je connoiſſ	-e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
7.	Je conn	-uſſe,	uſſes,	ût.	uſſions,	uſſiez,	uſſent.
8.	-	connoi	-s,	ſſe;	ſſons,	ſſez,	ſſent.

9. Inſtruire, *to inſtruct.* G. inſtruiſant. P. inſtruit.

1.	J'inſtrui	-s,	s,	t;	ſons,	ſez,	ſent.
2.	J'inſtruiſ	-ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
3.	J'inſtruiſ	-is,	it,	it;	îmes,	îtes,	îrent.
4.	J'inſtrui	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
5.	J'inſtrui	-rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
6.	J'inſtruiſ	-e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
7.	J'inſtruiſ	-iſſe,	iſſes,	ît;	iſſions,	iſſiez,	iſſent.
8.	-	inſtrui	-s,	ſe;	ſons,	ſez,	ſent.

10. Vendre, *to ſell.* G. vendant. P. vendu.

1.	Je ven	-ds,	ds,	d;	dons,	dez,	dent.
2.	Je vend	-ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
3.	Je vend	-is,	is,	it;	îmes,	îtes,	îrent.
4.	Je vend	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
5.	Je vend	-rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
6.	Je vend	-e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
7.	Je vend	-iſſe,	iſſes,	ît;	iſſions,	iſſiez,	iſſent.
8.	-	ven	-ds,	de;	dons,	dez,	dent.

TABLE I.

IRREGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

This Table comprehends the first Person of the Simple Tenses of all the Irregular Verbs of good Use.

INFINITIVE.				INDICATIVE.					SUBJUNCTIVE.		
Pres.		*ger.*	*part.*	*pres.*	*imp.*	*pret.*	*fut.*	*cond.*	*pres.*	*pret.*	
abso	-udre,	lvant,	us;	us,	lvois,		udrai,	udrois;	lve,		*To absolve.*
abstra	-ire,	yant,	it;	is,	yois,		irai,	irois;	ie,		*abstract.*
accour	-ir,	ant,	u;	s,	ois,	us,	rai,	rois;	e,	usse,	*run.*
accueill	-ir,	ant,	i;	e,	ois,	is,	erai,	erois;	e,	isse,	*welcome.*
acqu	-érir,	érant,	is;	iers,	éroie,	is,	errai,	errois;	ière,	isse,	*acquire.*
adm	-ettre,	ettant,	is;	ets,	ettois,	is,	ettrai,	ettrois;	ette,	isse,	*admit.*
all	-er,	allant,	allé;	vais,	allois,	allai,	irai,	irois;	aille,	allasse,	*go.*
appr	-endre,	enant,	is;	ends,	enois,	is,	endrai,	endrois;	enne,	isse,	*learn.*
assaill	-ir,	ant,	i;	e,	ois,	is,	erai,	erois;	e,	isse,	*assault.*
ass	-eoir,	éyant,	is;	eds,	éyois,	is,	éerai,	éerois;	éie,	isse,	*sit.*
b	-oire,	uvant,	u;	ois,	uvois,	us,	oirai,	oirois;	oive,	usse,	*drink.*
bou	-illir,	illant,	illi;	s,	illois,	illis,	illirai,	illirois;	ille,	illisse,	*boil.*
circonscri	-re,	vant,	t;	s,	vois,	vis,	rai,	rois;	ve,	visse,	*circumscribe.*
comm	-ettre,	-ettant,	is;	ets,	ettois,	is,	ettrai,	ettrois;	ette,	isse,	*commit.*
compr	-endre,	enant,	is;	ends	enois,	is,	endrai,	endrois;	enne,	isse,	*comprehend.*
comprom	-ettre,	ettant,	is;	ets,	ettois,	is,	ettrai,	ettrois;	ette,	isse,	*compromise.*

compr	-endre,	enant,	is;	ends	enois,	is,	endrai,	endrois;	ette,	isse,	*compromise.*
comprom	-ettre,	ettant,	is;	ets,	ettois,	is,	ettrai,	ettrois;			

INFINITIVE.				INDICATIVE.					SUBJUNCTIVE.		
Pref.		*ger.*	*part.*	*pref.*	*imp.*	*pret.*	*fut.*	*cond.*	*pref.*	*pret.*	
concl	-ure,	uant,	u;	us,	uois,	us,	urai,	urois;	ue,	usse,	*To conclude.*
concour	-ir,	ant,	u;	s,	ois,	us,	rai,	rois;	e,	usse,	*concur.*
confi	-re,	sant,	t;	s,	sois,	s,	rai,	rois;	se,	sse,	*pickle.*
conqu	-érir,	érant,	is;	iers,	érois,	is,	errai,	errois;	ière,	isse,	*conquer.*
contrédi	-re,	sant,	t;	s,	sois,	s,	rai,	rois;	se,	sse,	*contradict.*
convain	-cre,	quant,	cu;	cs,	quois,	quis,	crai,	crois;	que,	quisse,	*convince.*
cou	-dre,	sant,	su;	s,	sois,	sis,	drai,	drois;	se,	sisse,	*sew.*
cour	-ir,	ant,	u;	s,	ois,	us,	rai,	rois;	e,	usse,	*run.*
couv	-rir,	rant,	ert;	re,	rois,	ris,	rirai,	rirois;	re,	risse,	*cover.*
cr	-oire,	oyant,	u;	ois,	oyois,	us,	oirai,	oirois;	oie,	usse,	*believe.*
cueill	-ir,	ant,	i;	e,	ois,	is,	erai,	erois;	e,	isse,	*gather.*
décou	-dre,	sant,	su;	s,	sois,	sis,	drai,	drois;	se,	sisse,	*unsew.*
découv	-rir,	rant,	ert;	re,	rois,	ris,	rirai,	rirois;	re,	risse,	*discover.*
décri	-re,	vant,	t;	s,	vois,	vis,	rai,	rois;	ve,	visse,	*describe.*
dédi	-re,	sant,	t;	s,	sois,	is,	rai,	rois;	se,	sse,	*unsay.*
dem	-ettre,	ettant,	is;	ets,	ettois,	is,	ettrai,	ettrois;	ette,	isse,	*put out.*
dépl	-aire,	aisant,	u;	ais,	aisois,	us,	airai,	airois;	aisse,	usse,	*displease.*
désappr	-endre,	enant,	is;	ends,	enois,	is,	endrai,	endrois;	enne,	isse,	*unlearn.*
di	-re,	sant,	t;	s,	sois,	s,	rai,	rois;	se,	sse,	*say.*
discour	-ir,	ant,	u;	s,	ois,	us,	rai,	rois;	e,	usse,	*discourse.*
dissо	-udre,	lvant,	us;	us,	lvois,		udrai,	udrois;	lve,		*dissolve.*
distra	-ire,	yant,	it;	is,	yois,		irai,	irois;	ie,		*distract.*

INFINITIVE.				INDICATIVE.					SUBJUNCTIVE.		
Pref.		*ger.*	*part.*	*pref.*	*imp.*	*pret.*	*fut.*	*cond.*	*perſ.*	*pret.*	
écri	-re,	vant,	t;	s,	vois,	vis,	rai,	rois;	ve,	viſſe,	*To write.*
él	-ire,	iſant,	u;	is,	iſois,	us,	irai,	irois;	iſe,	uſſe,	*elect.*
émou,	-dre,	lant,	lu;	ds,	lois,	lus,	drai,	drois;	le,	luſſe,	*grind.*
encour,	-ir,	ant,	u;	s,	ois,	us,	rai,	rois;	e,	uſſe,	*incur,*
entrépr	-endre,	enant,	is;	ends,	enois,	is,	endrai,	endrois;	enne,	iſſe,	*undertake.*
entrev	-oir,	oyant,	u;	ois,	oyois,	is,	errai,	errois;	oie,	iſſe,	*foreſee.*
entrouv	-rir,	rant,	ert;	re,	rois,	ris,	rirai,	rirois;	re,	riſſe,	*open.*
env	-oyer,	oyant,	oyé;	oie,	oyois,	oyai,	errai,	errois;	oie,	oyaſſe,	*ſend.*
équiva	-loir,	lant,	lu;	ux,	lois,	lus,	udrai,	udrois;	ille,	luſſe,	*be equal.*
exclu	-re,	ant,	s;	s,	ois,	s,	rai,	rois;	e,	ſſe,	*exclude.*
extra	-ire,	yant,	it;	is,	yois,		irai,	irois;	ie,		*extract.*
fu	-ir,	yant,	i;	is,	yois,	is,	irai,	irois;	ie,	iſſe,	*ſhun.*
ha	-ïr,	ïſſant,	ï;	is,	ïſſois,	ïs,	ïrai,	ïrois;	ïſſe,	ïſſe,	*hate.*
inſcri	-re,	vant,	t;	s,	vois,	vis,	rai,	rois;	ve,	viſſe,	*inſcribe.*
interdi	-re,	ſant,	t;	s,	ſois,	s,	rai,	rois;	ſe,	ſſe,	*forbid.*
l	-ire,	iſant,	u;	is,	iſois,	us,	irai,	irois;	iſe,	uſſe,	*read.*
maudi	-re,	ſſant,	t;	s,	ſſois,	s,	rai,	rois;	ſſe,	ſſe,	*curſe.*
médi	-re,	ſant,	t;	s,	ſois,	s,	rai,	rois;	ſe,	ſſe,	*ſlander.*
mépr	-endre,	énant,	is;	ends,	énois,	is,	endrai,	endrois;	enne,	iſſe,	*miſtake.*
m	-ettre,	ettant,	is;	ets,	ettois,	is,	ettrai,	ettrois;	ette,	iſſe,	*put.*
mou	-dre,	lant,	lu;	ds,	lois,	lus,	drai,	drois;	le,	luſſe,	*grind.*
m	-ourir,	ourant,	ort;	eurs,	ourois,	ourus,	ourrai,	ourrois;	eure,	ouruſſe,	*die.*

m	-ourir,	ourant,	ort;	eurs,	ourois,	ourus,	ourrai,	ourrois;	eure,	ourusse,	*ait.*	

INFINITIVE.				INDICATIVE.					SUBJUNCTIVE.		
Pref.		*ger.*	*part.*	*pref.*	*imp.*	*pret.*	*fut.*	*cond.*	*pref.*	*pert.*	
n	-aître,	aiſſant,	é;	ais,	aiſſois,	aquis,	aîtrai,	aîtrois;	aiſſe,	aquiſſe,	*To be born.*
off	-rir,	rant,	ert;	re,	rois,	ris,	rirai,	rirois;	re,	riſſe,	*offer.*
om	-ettre,	ettant,	is;	ets,	ettois,	is,	ettrai,	ettrois;	ette,	iſſe,	*omit.*
ouv	-rir,	rant,	ert;	re,	rois,	is,	rirai,	rirois;	re,	riſſe,	*open.*
P	-aître,	aiſſant,	u;	ais,	aiſſois,	us,	aitrai,	aitrois;	aiſſe,	uſſe,	*graze.*
parcour	-ir,	ant,	u;	s,	ois,	us,	rai,	rois;	e,	uſſe,	*run over.*
perm	-ettre,	ettant,	is;	ets,	ettois,	is,	ettrai,	ettrois;	ette,	iſſe,	*permit.*
pl	-aire,	aiſant,	u;	ais,	aiſois,	us,	airai,	airois;	aiſe,	uſſe,	*pleaſe.*
pourſui	-vre,	vant,	vi;	s,	vois,	vis,	vrai,	vrois;	ve,	viſſe,	*purſue.*
pourv	-oir,	oyant,	u;	ois,	oyois,	vus,	oirai,	oirois;	oie,	vuſſe,	*provide.*
p	-ouvoir	ouvant,	u;	eux,	ouvois,	us,	ourrai,	ourrois;	uiſſe,	uſſe,	*be able.*
prédi,	-re,	ſant,	t;	s,	ſois,	s,	rai,	rois;	ſe,	ſſe,	*foretell.*
pr	-endre,	enant,	is;	ends,	enois,	is,	endrai,	endrois;	enne,	iſſe,	*take.*
preſcri	-re,	vant,	t;	s,	vois,	vis,	rai,	rois;	ve,	viſſe,	*preſcribe.*
préva	-loir,	lant,	lu;	ux,	lois,	lus,	udrai,	udrois;	ille,	luſſe,	*prevail.*
prom	-ettre,	ettant,	is;	ets,	ettois,	is,	ettrai,	ettrois;	ette,	iſſe,	*promiſe.*
proſcri	-re,	vant,	t;	s,	vois,	vis,	rai,	rois;	ve,	viſſe,	*proſcribe.*
rappr	-endre,	enant,	is;	ends,	enois,	is,	endrai,	endrois;	enne,	iſſe,	*learn again.*
reconqu	-érir,	érant,	is;	iers,	érois,	is,	errai,	errois;	ère,	iſſe,	*reconquer.*
recou	-dre,	ſant,	ſu;	s,	ſois,	ſis,	drai,	drois;	ſe,	ſiſſe,	*ſew again.*
recour	-ir,	ant,	u;	s,	ois,	us,	rai,	rois;	e,	uſſe,	*have recourſe.*
recouv	-rir,	rant,	ert;	re,	rois,	ris,	rirai,	rirois;	re,	riſſe,	*new cover.*

INFINITIVE.				INDICATIVE.					SUBJUNCTIVE.		
Pref.		*ger.*	*part.*	*pref.*	*imp.*	*pret.*	*fut.*	*cond.*	*pref.*	*pret.*	
recri	-re,	vant,	t;	s,	vois,	vis,	rai,	rois;	ve,	viſſe,	*To write over.*
recueill	-ir,	ant,	i;	e,	ois,	is,	erai,	erois;	e,	iſſe,	*gather.*
redi	-re,	ſant,	t;	ſe,	ſois,	s,	rai,	rois;	ſe,	ſſe,	*ſay again.*
rel	-ire,	iſant,	u;	is,	iſois,	us,	irai,	irois;	iſe,	uſſe,	*read over.*
rem	-ettre,	ettant,	is;	ets,	ettois,	is,	ettrai,	ettrois;	ette,	iſſe,	*put again.*
remou	-dre,	lant,	lu;	ds,	lois,	lus,	drai,	drois;	le,	luſſe,	*grind again.*
ren	-aître,	aiſſant,	é;	ais,	aiſſois,	aquis,	aîtrai,	aîtrois;	aiſſe,	aquiſſe,	*be born again.*
renv	-oyer,	oyant,	oyé;	oie,	oyois,	oyai,	errai,	errois;	oie,	oyaſſe,	*ſend back.*
repr	-endre,	enant,	is;	ends,	enois,	is,	endrai,	endrois;	enne,	iſſe,	*take again.*
requ	-érir,	érant,	is;	iers,	érois,	is,	errai,	errois;	ère,	iſſe,	*require.*
réſo	-udre,	lvant,	lu;	uds,	lvois,	lus,	udrai,	udrois;	lve,	luſſe,	*reſolve.*
revêt	-ir,	ant,	u;	s,	ois,	is,	irai,	irois;	e,	iſſe,	*inveſt.*
rev	-ivre,	ivant,	écu;	is,	ivois,	écus,	ivrai,	ivrois;	ive,	écuſſe,	*revive.*
rev	-oir,	oyant,	u;	ois,	oyois,	is,	errai,	errois;	oie,	iſſe,	*ſee again.*
r	-ire,	iant,	i;	is,	iois,	is,	irai,	irois;	ie,	iſſe,	*laugh.*
ſ	-avoir,	achant,	u;	ais,	avois,	us,	aurai,	aurois;	ache,	uſſe,	*know.*
ſécour	-ir,	ant,	u;	s,	ois,	us,	rai,	rois;	e,	uſſe,	*relieve.*
ſouff	-rir,	rant,	ert;	re,	rois,	ris,	rirai,	rirois;	re,	riſſe,	*ſuffer.*
ſoum	-ettre,	ettant,	is;	ets,	ettois,	is,	ettrai,	ettrois;	ette,	iſſe,	*ſubmit.*
ſour	-ire,	iant,	i;	is,	iois,	is,	irai,	irois;	ie,	iſſe,	*ſmile.*
ſouſcri	-re,	vant,	t;	s,	vois,	vis,	rai,	rois;	ve,	viſſe,	*ſubſcribe.*
ſouſtra	-ire,	yant,	it;	is,	yois,		irai,	irois;	ie,		*ſubtract.*

ſouſcri	-re,	vant,	t;	s,	vois,	vis,	rai,	rois;	ve,	viſſe,	*Subſcribe.*		
ſouſtra	-ire,	yant,	it;	is,	yois,		irai,	irois;	ie,		*ſubtract.*		

INFINITIVE.				INDICATIVE.					SUBJUNCTIVE.		
Preſ.		*ger.*	*part.*	*preſ.*	*imp.*	*pret.*	*fut.*	*cond.*	*preſ.*	*pret.*	
ſui	-vre,	vant,	vi;	s,	vois,	vis,	vrai,	vrois;	ve,	viſſe,	*To follow.*
ſurpr	-endre,	enant,	is;	ends,	enois,	is,	endrai,	endrois;	enne,	iſſe,	*ſurpriſe.*
ſurv	-ivre,	ivant,	écu;	is,	ivois,	écus,	ivrai,	ivrois;	ive,	écuſſe,	*out-live.*
t	-aire,	aiſant,	u;	ais,	aiſois,	us,	airai,	airois;	aiſe,	uſſe,	*conceal.*
tra	-ire,	yant,	it;	s,	yois,		irai,	irois;	ie,		*milk.*
tranſcri	-re,	vant,	t;	is,	vois,	vis,	rai,	rois;	ve,	viſſe,	*tranſcribe.*
tranſm	-ettre,	ettant,	is;	ets,	ettois,	is,	ettrai,	ettrois;	ette,	iſſe,	*tranſmit.*
tréſſaill	-ir,	ant,	i;	e,	ois,	is,	erai,	erois;	e,	iſſe,	*ſtart.*
vain	-cre,	quant,	cu;	cs,	quois,	quis,	crai,	crois;	que,	quiſſe,	*vanquiſh.*
va	-loir,	lant,	lu;	ux,	lois,	lus,	udrai,	udrois;	ille,	luſſe,	*be worth.*
v	-ivre,	ivant,	écu;	is,	ivois,	écus,	ivrai,	ivrois;	ive,	écuſſe,	*live.*
v	-oir,	oyant,	u;	ois,	oyois,	is,	errai,	errois;	oie,	iſſe,	*ſee.*
v	-ouloir	oulant,	oulu;	eux,	oulois,	oulus,	oudrai,	oudrois;	euille,	ouluſſe,	*be willing.*

TABLE II.

Shewing how to find out all the Persons of the Verbs regular and irregular, the first Person being known.

RULE 1.—*Singular of the Present Indicative.*

The first person ends in *e*, *s*, or *x*.—When it ends in *e*, the second ends in *s*, and the third in *e*, like the first; ex. *je parle, tu parles, il parle.*

When the first person ends in *s* or *x*, the second is like the first, and the third changes *s* or *x* into *t*; as, *je lis, tu lis, il lit*; *je veux, tu veux, il veut.*

If however the first person ends in *cs*, *ds*, or *ts*, the third ends in *c*, *d*, or *t*, and the *s* is entirely left out; as je vainc*s*, tu vainc*s*, il vain*c*; je perd*s*, tu perd*s*, il perd; je met*s*, tu met*s*, il met.—*No Exceptions.*

Take the list of verbs, which is at the end of the grammar, and make the pupil apply this rule to several verbs; and so on to all other rules. This practice will make him soon perfect in the verbs, and teach him orthography at the same time.

RULE 2.—*Plural of the Present Indicative.*

The three persons plural are formed from the gerund, by changing the final *ant* into *ons* for the first person, *ez* for the second, and *ent* for the third; as, li*sant*, ger. li*sons*, li*sez*, li*sent*, pl. If there is a *y* in the gerund before *ant*, it is changed into *i* for the third person plural; as, cro*yant*, ger. cro*yons*, cro*yez*, cro*ient*, pl. not cro*yent*.

Exceptions.—You must except from this rule the auxiliary *avoir* and *être*, and all the regular verbs of the fourth, fifth, and sixth conjugations, which are conjugated at full length in page 23. Also the following irregular verbs: *aller* makes *vais, vas, va, allons, allez, vont*; *savoir* makes *sais, sais, sait, savons, savez, savent*, not sachons; boire, *buvant, boivent*; mourir, *mourant, meurent*; pouvoir, *pouvant, peuvent*; prendre, *prenant, prennent*; vouloir, *voulant, veulent*; and their compound make the third person in the same manner. *Dire* and *redire* make *vous dites, vous redites* in the second plural, and not vous disez, vous redisez.

RULE 3.—*Imperfect Tense.*

The imperfect is formed from the gerund, by changing the final *ant* into

ois, ois, oit; ions, iez, oient;

as, li*sant*, ger. *je lisois, tu lisois, il lisoit; nous lisions, vous lisiez, ils lisoient.*

Exceptions.—You must except *avoir* and *savoir*, which

make in the gerund *ayant, ſachant*; and in the imperfect *j'avois, je ſavois*, and not jayois, je ſachois.

RULE 4.—*Preterite of the Indicative.*

The firſt perſon of this tenſe has four different terminations; *ai, ins, is*, or *us*, which muſt be learnt by heart in all verbs, as they are not formed from any tenſe; but all other perſons are formed from the firſt by changing the final, as follows:

ai,	as,	a;	ames,	âtes,	êrent.
ins,	ins,	int;	înmes,	întes,	inrent.
is,	is,	it;	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
us,	us,	ut;	ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.

N.B The firſt conjugation ends in *ai*; the fourth, in *ins*; the fifth, in *us*; and all others in *is*.

Obſerve in table the firſt of the irregular verbs, 1. that moſt of the participles which end in *is*, are the ſame in the preterite, as, *mis, pris, aſſis*, participle; *je mis, je pris, j'aſſis*, preterite; 2. that moſt of the participles which end in *i* or *u*, end in *is* or *us* in the preterite; as, *ri, lu*, participles; *je ris, je lus*, preterite. Theſe obſervations do not ſtand good for the regular verbs.

RULE 5.—*Future of the Indicative.*

The future is formed from the preſent of the infinitive, by changing the final *r* or *re* into

rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.

Exceptions.—The following verbs, and thoſe conjugated after them, make the infinitive and future, as follows; *avoir*, j'aurai; aſſeoir, jaſſeirai; acquérir, j'acquerrai; courir, je courrai; cueillir, je cueillerai; envoyer, j'enverrai; être, je ſerai; faloir, il faudra; mourir, je mourrai; pleuvoir, il pleuvra; pouvoir, je pourrai; recevoir, je recevrai; ſavoir, je ſaurai; tenir, je tiendrai; valoir, je vaudrai; vouloir, je voudrai; and voir, je verrai. The other perſons are formed from the firſt, as before.

RULE 6.—*Conditional Tenſe.*

The conditional is invariably formed from the future, by changing the final *rai* into

rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.

RULE 7.—*Preſent of the Subjunctive.*

The preſent of the ſubjunctive ends always in *e*, and is formed from the gerund, by changing the final *ant* into

e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.

Exceptions.—The firſt and ſecond perſons plural have no exceptions; but the following verbs, and thoſe conjugated af-

ter them, make the gerund and the firſt perſon of the ſubjunctive, as follows; aller, allant, j'aille; boire, buvant, je boive; faire, faiſant, je faſſe; mourir, mourant, je meure; pouvoir, pouvant, je puiſſe; prendre, prenant, je prenne; recevoir, recevant, je reçoive; tenir, tenant, je tienne; valoir, valant, je vaille; vouloir, voulant, je veuille.

Obſerve that the ſecond perſon is formed by adding an *s* to the firſt; that the third ſingular is like the firſt; and that the third plural is alſo formed from the firſt ſingular, by adding *nt* to it; thus, *e, es, e, ent*; and conſequently the verbs which are irregular in the firſt perſon, are always irregular in the ſecond ſingular, and in the third perſon of both numbers.

Obſerve alſo, that the final *yant* of the gerund is changed into *ie* for the ſubjunctive; as, *croyant, je croie*, not je croye.

RULE 8.—*Preterite of the Subjunctive.*

This tenſe is formed from the firſt perſon of the preterite of the indicative, by changing *ai* into *aſſe*, and by adding *ſe* to all others; as, *j'aimai, j'aimaſſe*; *je tins, je tinſſe*; *j'agis, j'agiſſe*; *je reçus, je reçuſſe*; and ſo on for all others.

aſſe,	aſſes,	ât;	aſſions,	aſſiez,	aſſent.
inſſe,	inſſes,	înt;	inſſions,	inſſiez,	inſſent.
iſſe,	iſſes,	ît;	iſſions,	iſſiez,	iſſent.
uſſe,	uſſes,	ût;	uſſions,	uſſiez,	uſſent.

RULE 9.—*Imperative Mood.*

The ſecond perſon ſingular, the firſt and ſecond plural of the imperative, are like the ſame perſons of the preſent of the indicative. The third perſons ſingular and plural of the imperative, are like the third ſingular and plural of the ſubjunctive.

Exceptions.—The only exceptions to this rule are the verbs *avoir, être*, and *ſavoir*, which have all the perſons of the imperative like thoſe of the ſubjunctive.

EXERCISE upon the AUXILIARY VERBS TO HAVE *and* TO BE.—*See p.* 22.

N.B. You muſt apply here, and always in future, the rules for the feminine of adjectives, and thoſe for the plural of nouns. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, denote the tenſes. 1 Denotes the preſent tenſe, 2 the imperfect, 3 the preterite, 4 the future, and 5 the conditional.

1. I have a *new* ribband; ſhe has a *new* gown; we have
neuf ruban m *robe* f *des*
new ſtockings; you have *new* ruffles; they have a fine noſe-
bas pl *manchette* f *beau bou-*
gay.—2. I had a good maſter; ſhe had a good miſtreſs; we
quet m *bon maître* m *maîtreſſe* f

had good brothers; you had good ſiſters, they had good
frère *ſœurs* *de*
friends.—3. I had a great garden; he had a great houſe; we
ami *grand jardin* m *maiſon* f
had two great gardens; you had two great houſes; they had a
deux *deux* *maiſon*
young turkey for their dinner.—4. I ſhall have a white
jeune *dindon* m *diner.* *blanc*
horſe; he ſhall have a white waiſtcoat; we ſhall have white
cheval m *veſte* f *des*
curtains; you ſhall have a bad ſupper; they ſhall have a bad
rideau *mauvais ſouper* m
excuſe.—5. I would have a delicious fruit; ſhe would have a
excuſe f *délicieux fruit* m
delicious pear; we would have a precious jewel; you would
poire f *joyau* m
have a precious ſtone; they would have a bloody war.
pierre f *ſanglant guerre* f,

1. I am ſick; thou art young; he is unhappy; ſhe is un-
malade *jeune* *malheureux*
happy; we are laborious; you are modeſt; they are lazy.
laborieux *modeſte* *pareſſeux.*
2. I was prudent; ſhe was prudent; we were diſcreet; you
prudent *diſcret* pl.
were ſtudious; they were jealous; your ſiſters were jealous.
ſtudieux *jaloux* *ſœurs*
3. I was his intimate friend; ſhe was my greateſt enemy; we
ſon intime *ami* *ma* *ennemie* f
were generous; you were ungrateful; they were cruel; your
généreux *ingrat* *cruel*
daughters were cruel.—4. I ſhall be a brave ſoldier; he will
filles f *un* *ſoldat*
be a handſome man; ſhe will be a handſome woman; we will
bel *homme* *femme*
be faithful to our country; you will be in continual fears;
fidelle *notre pays* *dans des continuel craintes* f pl
they will be our mortal enemies.
nos *mortel ennemi* pl.

EXERCISE upon the REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

See p. 23.

To conjugate a verb upon another, is to make the final of every tenſe and perſon of one verb, in perfect rhyme with the verb upon which it is conjugated. To make this rhyme perfect, conſider the infinitive as the roots of verbs from which all tenſes are formed; and change for any perſon the ſame letters in all

verbs of the ſame conjugation; thus, as parl*er* makes parl*ant*; parl*é*, je parl*e*, je parl*ois*, chant*er* will make chant*ant*, chant*é*, je chant*e*, je chant*ois*; and ſo on for all other tenſes and perſons without any exception.

Firſt Conjugation.—1. I love my father; thou adoreſt God; *aimer père adorer Dieu*
he alarms the country; ſhe dances very well; we announce a *alarmer pays* m *dancer tres-bien annoncer*
good news; you water the garden; they attack the enemy. *nouvelle arroſer jardin* m *alloquer ennemi*
2. I did ſweep the ſchool; he did warm the bed; ſhe did em- *balayer école baſſiner lit* m *bro-*
broider her gown; we did ſeal the letter; you did begin your *der ſa robe* f *cacheter lettre* f *commencer*
exerciſe; they did condemn my conduct.—3. I diſmiſſed the *thême* m *condamner conduite* f *renvoyer*
ſervant; he conſidered the queſtion; ſhe comforted her mother; *domeſtique conſidérer queſtion* f *conſoler ſa*
we ſatisfied our maſter; you corrected the faults; they un- *contenter maître corriger faute dé-*
ſealed the letter.—4. I will decide the queſtion; he will de- *cacheter lettre* f *décider* f *dé-*
clare the war; ſhe will breakfaſt with us; we will diſarm the *clarer guerre* f *déjeuner avec déſarmer*
wicked; you will undeceive my ſiſter; they will differ the *méchans détromper ſœur différer*
puniſhment.—5. I would frequent a good company; he would *punition* f *fréquenter compagnie* f
engrave my arms; ſhe would humble your pride; we would *graver armes humilier orgueil*
print a grammar; you would forget the injuries; they would *imprimer grammaire* f *oublier injure*
reform their conduct.
réformer conduite

Second Conjugation.—I ſhorten the way; he ſoftens the *accourcir chemin* f *adoucir*
hearts; ſhe ſets free her ſlaves; we remove the difficulties; you *cœurs* pl *affranchir eſclaves applanir difficultés*
applaud to what he ſays; they examine into the queſtion. *applaudir a ce qu'il dit approfondir* f
2. I did warn your brother of his danger; he did build the for- *avertir ſon* m
tifications of our town; we did baniſh the wicked from our *ville bannir méchans*
ſociety; you did chuſe a bad colour; they did convert the *ſociété choiſir mauvais couleur* f *convertir*

impious.—3. I unfurniſhed the houſe; he demoliſhed the
impie *dégarnir* *maiſon* f *démolir*
wall; we diſobeyed our maſter; you invaded their country;
mur m *déſobéir à* *maître* *envahir* *pays*
they filled up the bottle with wine.—4. I ſhall finiſh my work
emplir *bouteille* f *de vin* *finir* *ouvrage* m
to-night; this tree will ſoon bloſſom; he will furniſh this
ce ſoir *cet arbre* *bientôt fleurir* *garnir*
room; we will ſucceed in our undertaking; you will enjoy
chambre f *réuſſir dans* *entrépriſe* *jouir*
a good health; they will languiſh a long while.—5. I would
d'une *ſanté* f *languir* * *long tems*
nouriſh the chickens; he would betray my intereſt; we would
nourrir *poulet* *trahir* *intérêt*
weaken their party; you would roaſt the hare; they would
affoiblir *parti* *rôtir* *liévre* m
undergo the puniſhment.
ſubir *punition* f

Third Conjugation.—1. I conſent to the marriage of my
conſentir m
ſon; ſhe tells a ſtory as often as ſhe opens her mouth; we
fils *mentir* *toutes les fois qu'elle ouvre la bouche*
ſet out for France to-morrow; you foreſee the misfortunes
partir pour la *demain* *préſentir* *malheur* pl
before they come; they repent.—2. I did ſleep very well;
avant qu'ils arrivent *ſe repentir* *dormir*
he did ſmell very bad; we did ſerve our country; you did
ſentir *mauvais* *ſervir*
go out before me; they did reſent the effects of his paſſion.
ſortir *avant moi* *reſſentir* *effets* *colère* f
3. I ſlept very well yeſterday; he felt his misfortune; we
dormir *hier* *ſentir* *malheur* m
conſented to pay your father; you went out without my
conſentir à payer *père* *ſortir* * *ſans*
leave; they repented their conduct.—4. I ſhall go out to-
permiſſion *ſe repentir de* *conduite* *ſortir de-*
morrow if it is fine weather; he will ſerve his friend; we will
main *s'il fait* *tems* m *ſervir* *ami*
ſmell the dinner when it is ready; you will conſent to go
ſentir *dîner* *quand il ſera prêt* *conſentir à y aller*
there; they will ſet out to-morrow for London.
partir *pour Londres*

Fourth Conjugation.—1. I hold my book; ſhe abſtains
tenir *livre* m *s'abſtenir*
from eating fruits; we agree with you that he was in the
de manger des fruits *convenir* *qu'il avoit* *

wrong; you become an honeſt man; theſe horſes belong to
tort *devenir* *honnête* *ces cheval appartenir*
my father.—2. I did maintain the fact; he did obtain a good
père *ſoutenir* *fait* m *obtenir*
place; we did return home; you did detain my ſon; they did
f *revenir à la maiſon* *détenir* *fils*
remember the fact.—3. I diſcovered what he ſaid; he main-
ſe reſſouvenir du fait *diſconvenir de ce qu'il dit* *main-*
tained the diſcipline in the army; we contained the mob; you
tenir *dans armée* *contenir* *populace* f
intervened in the affair; they kept their promiſes.—4. I will
intervenir dans affaire *tenir* *promeſſe*
obtain the conſent of the king; ſhe will return to-night from
obtenir conſentement m *roi* *revenir ce ſoir* *de la*
town; we will attain our aim; you will ſupport your rank;
ville *parvenir à* *but* *ſoutenir* *rang*
they will return in few days.—5. I would keep better my
revenir en peu de jours *entretenir mieux*
family; he would become a learned man; you would detain
famille *devenir* *ſavant* *détenir*
the captain; they would obtain what they aſk.
capitaine *obtenir cequ' demander*

Fifth Conjugation.—I conceive how that has happened; he
concevoir comment cela *arrivé*
perceives your intentions; we owe ten pounds to your father;
s'appercevoir de *devoir dix livre*
you receive a letter; they perceive the danger.—3. I received
recevoir *lettre* f *appercevoir* m *recevoir*
a viſit from your ſiſter; ſhe conceived great hopes; we per-
viſite f *de* *ſœur* *concevoir de* *eſpérance* *aper-*
ceived a thief; you received a great ſum of money yeſterday;
cevoir *voleur* *recevoir* *ſomme* f *d'argent* *hier*
they perceived your trick.—4. I ſhall receive a letter from
s'appercevoir de *tour* *recevoir* *lettre* f
France in few days; he will owe me two hundred pounds at
en peu de jours *me devoir* *cent* *livre à*
the death of my mother; we will receive a reward for that
mort f *mère* *recevoir* *récompenſe* f *cette*
brilliant action; you will eaſily perceive if they are guilty;
f *appercevoir aiſément* *coupables*
they will conceive a new project.—5. I would receive his
concevoir *nouveau projet* m *recevoir*
advice; he ſhould write to his brother; we would perceive if
avis m *devoir écrire* *frère* *appercevoir*
he ſays the truth; you ought to do your exerciſe; they would
dit *vérité* f *devoir faire* *théme*
receîve your preſents with joy.
recevoir

Sixth Conjugation.—1. I do my taſk; he undoes my work;
faire tâche f *defaire ouvrage* m
we ſatisfy our creditors; you counterfeit my writing; they do
ſatisfaire créanciers contréfaire écriture faire
what they pleaſe.—2. I was doing my exerciſe when you
ce qu'ils veulent faire thême m *quand vous*
came; he did counterfeit his voice; we did exact too much;
vintes contréfaire voix f *ſurfaire trop*
you did ſatisfy your maſter; they did do the ſame thing
ſatisfaire maître faire la mime choſe
twice.—3. I ſatisfied my ſuperiors; he made great progreſs
deux fois ſatisfaire ſupérieur faire de progrès
in the French language; we defeated the enemy; you ſatisfied
françois langue f *defaire ennemi ſatisfaire*
my curioſity; they made a great objection.—4. I ſhall do my
curioſité f *faire* f *faire*
exerciſe after breakfaſt; he will make all his efforts; we will
thême m *après déjeuner faire tous*
ſatisfy our maſter; you will undo what I have done; they
ſatisfaire maître defaire ce que j'ai fait
will make a treaty of peace.—5. I would do every thing
faire traité m *de paix faire tout*
to pleaſe you; he would make a good ſoldier; we would
pour vous plaire faire bon ſoldat
make a great noiſe; you would ſatisfy their ambition; they
grand bruit m *ſatisfaire*
would counterfeit a bank-note.
contréfaire un billet de banque

Seventh Conjugation.—1. I fear my maſter; ſhe extinguiſhes
craindre éteindre
the fire; we pity the unfortunates; you paint very well;
feu m *plaindre malheureux* pl *peindre très-bien*
they complain of every body.—2. I did fear your anger; he
ſe plaindre tout le monde craindre colère
did pity my ſiſter; we did dye the ſilk; you did conſtrain my
plaindre ſœur teindre ſoie f *contraindre*
couſin to ſell his houſe; they did paint a ſhipwreck.—3. I
à vendre maiſon f *peindre un naufrage*
feigned to be ſick; he tranſgreſſed the laws of his country;
feindre être malade enfreindre lois pays
we joined the hands; you put out the candles; they com-
joindre main éteindre chandelle con-
pelled their ſon to learn mathematicks.—4. I will enjoin to
traindre fils à apprendre les enjoindre
the ſervant to ſtay at home; ſhe will tranſgreſs your orders;
au domeſtique de reſter à la maiſon enfreindre ordre

we will paint our room; you will pity their folly; they will
peindre chambre plaindre ſollie
fear to be diſcovered.—5. I would compel the enemy to fight;
craindre d'être découverts contraindre ennemi combattre
he would fear to diſpleaſe his maſter; we would feign to be-
craindre de déplaire à feindre de les
lieve them; you would paint very well; they would tranſ-
croire peindre bien en-
greſs the conſtitution.
freindre f

Eighth Conjugation.—1. I know your father; he forgets
connoître méconnoître
his friends; we increaſe our income; you appear very dull;
amis accoître revenu paroître triſte
they appear and diſappear in a moment.—3. I knew your
paroître diſparoître dans connoître
ſiſter when ſhe ſpoke; ſhe knew the world before you; we
ſœur quand parla monde m *avant*
appeared in public; you appeared diſſatisfied; they knew
paroître public mécontent reconnoître
their horſe again.—4. I will know the whole buſineſs; ſhe
cheval f *connoître tout l'affaire*
will appear handſomer; we will grow this year; they will
paroître plus belle croître année
know your father and mother.—5. I would acknowledge
connoître père mère reconnoître
your innocence; ſhe would grow every day, if ſhe was not
croître tous les jours n'étoit pas
ſick; we would know the forces of the enemy; you would
malade connoître ennemi
appear older than me; they would know the truth.
paroître plus âgé que moi connoître vérité f

Ninth Conjugation.—1. I inſtruct youth; ſhe induces in
inſtruire la jeuneſſe induire en
error; we tranſlate Engliſh into French; you ſeduce the ig-
erreur traduire l'Anglois en François ſéduire
norants by your diſcourſes; theſe trees produce good apples
diſcours ces arbres produire de pommes
every year.—2. I did introduce a new cuſtom; he did deſtroy
tous les ans introduire coûtume f *détruire*
the wall; we did build a ſhip; you did conduct the enter-
mur conſtruire vaiſſeau m *conduire entré-*
priſe; they did produce their title.—3. I deducted the ex-
priſe produire titre déduire
pences; he behaved very well; we tranſlated their work; you
depenſe ſe conduire traduire ouvrage

ſeduced the witneſſes; they led young people into error.
séduire *temoin* *induire les jeunes gens en erreur*
4. I ſhall convey the water into the meadow; he will con-
conduire *eau* *prairie* f *con-*
ſtruct a palace; we will reduce your brother to ſilence; you
ſtruire *palais* *réduire* *frère* m
will inſtruct their children; they will deſtroy the fortifications.
inſtruire *enfans* *détruire*
5. I would tranſlate Italian; he would introduce my ſon to
traduire *Italien* *introduire* *fils*
the court; we would reconduct you home; you would plaiſ-
cour f *reconduire à la maiſon* *en-*
ter the wall; they would produce a good effect.
duire *mur* *produire* *effet* m

Tenth Conjugation.—1. I expect company to-day; he
attendre *compagnie* *aujourd'hui*
anſwers impudently; we hear a great noiſe; you defend your
répondre *impudemment* *entendre* *bruit* m *défendre*
country; they ſpill the human blood.—3. I ſold my houſe;
pays *répandre* *humain ſang* m *vendre*
he condeſcended to her deſires; we melted the lead; you loſt
condeſcendre *déſir* *fondre* *plomb* *perdre*
your time yeſterday; they ſtretched the arms.—4. I will an-
tems *hier* *tendre* *bras* *ré-*
ſwer in few words; he will hear what they ſay; we will
pondre en peu de mots *entendre ce qu' diſent*
loſe our friends; you will fight the enemy; they will ſell
perdre *ami* *combattre* *vendre*
their country-houſe.—5. I would confound his pride; he
maiſon de campagne *confondre* *orgueil*
would wait for an anſwer; we would interrupt the maſter;
attendre * *réponſe* *interrompre*
you would render juſtice to every body; they would hang
rendre *à tout le monde* *pendr*
the rebels.

EXERCISE upon the COMPOUND TENSES of the REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

When a verb is preceded by the auxiliary *to have* or *to be*, it is always in the participle; as j'ai *parlé*, je ſuis *puni*.

When a participle is preceded by any tenſe of the verb *être*, it agrees in French with the noun antecedent in gender and number, few caſes excepted; as, mon frère eſt *eſtimé*, ma ſœur eſt *eſtimée*; mes frères ſont *eſtimés*, mes ſœurs ſont *eſtimées*. When the participle comes after any tenſe of the verb *avoir*, it is only declinable in French in the

caſes mentioned in the rule 143. In the following exerciſe it will be declinable after the verb *être*, and indeclinable after *avoir*. The feminine and plural of participles are made like thoſe of adjectives, p. 14.

The participles of the ten regular conjugations are formed from the infinitive, by changing the final, as follows;

1. parl*er*	*é*	*to ſpeak.*	6. fai*re*	*t*	*to do.*
2. ag*ir*	*i*	*act.*	7. crain*dre*	*t*	*fear.*
3. ſent*ir*	*i*	*ſmell.*	8. conn*oître*	*u*	*know.*
4. ten*ir*	*u*	*hold.*	9. inſtru*ire*	*t*	*inſtruct.*
5. rec*evoir*	*u*	*receive.*	10. vend*re*	*u*	*ſell.*

N.B. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, &c. which in the following exerciſes are put before the verbs, denote of what conjugation they are.

EXERCISE upon the PARTICIPLES.

I have ſpoken to the queen of England; the law is abo-
1 *parler* *reine* f *d'Angleterre* *loi* 2 *abo-*
liſhed; we have ſlept very well; we are come to dine with
lir 3 *dormir* *bien* 4 *venir* *dîner*
you; you have received a letter; the letters are received; they
5 *recevoir* *lettre* f
have made the beds; the beds are made; we have put out the
6 *faire* *lit* m 7 *éteindre*
candles; the candles are put out; we have known their in-
chandelles f 7 *éteindre* 8 *connoître*
tentions; their intentions were known; you have tranſlated
f. 9 *traduire*
in French many Engliſh books; many Engliſh books are
en françois *pluſieurs* *anglois* *livres*
tranſlated into French. I have ſold my horſes; my horſes
traduire 10 *vendre* *cheval* m
are ſold; I had built a houſe; my houſe was built; we had
2 *bâtir*
foreſeen theſe misfortunes; you had ſerved your friends;
3 *preſſentir* *malheurs* 3 *ſervir* *amis*
your friends were gone; they had obtained his favour; his
3 *partir* 4 *obtenir* *faveur* f
pardon was obtained; we had perceived the enemies; the ene-
grace f 5 *appercevoir* *ennemi* pl
mies were perceived; they had defeated the French; the
6 *défaire* *françois* pl
French were defeated; I ſhall have done my taſk; my taſk
défaire 6 *faire* *tâche* f
ſhall be done; we have reduced your ſiſters to ſilence; your
9 *reduire* *ſœur* *au ſilence*

ſiſters were reduced to ſilence; you have ſealed the letter; the
1 *cacheter lettre* f
letter is ſealed; they had filled the bottles; the bottles were
2 *remplir bouteille* f
filled; the Auſtrians have made my brothers priſoners; my
autrichiens 6 *faire* *frère* m *priſonnier*
brothers are made priſoners; they had alſo detained my ſiſters;
4 *détenir* *ſœurs* f
my ſiſters were detained; we have joined the two parts to-
7 *joindre* *part* f *en-*
gether; the two parts are joined together; they had acknow-
ſemble 8 *recon-*
ledged my innocence; my innocence was acknowledged; we
noître *mon* f 8 *reconnoître*
have introduced this cuſtom; this cuſtom was introduced;
9 *introduire* *coûtume* f
you have ſeduced the witneſſes; the witneſſes are ſeduced;
9 *séduire* *temoin* m
they had anſwered to my queſtions; my queſtions were an-
10 *répondre* f *ré-*
ſwered.
pondre

Several Modes of Conjugating VERBS.

A verb may be conjugated with affirmation, negation, interrogation and pronouns as follows:

Rule 1. *With affirmation.*—By putting the nominative before the verb in French as in Engliſh; ex. *je parle*, I ſpeak; *tu parles*, thou ſpeakeſt; *il parle*, he ſpeaks.

Rule 2. *With negation.*—By putting the particle *ne* before the verb, and *pas* or *point* after; ex. je *ne* parle *pas*, I do not ſpeak; tu *ne* parles *pas*; il *ne* parle *pas*.

Rule 3. *With interrogation.*—By putting the nominative after the verb, if it is a perſonal pronoun; as, parlé-*je?* do I ſpeak? parles-*tu?* parle-t-*il?* But if the nominative be a ſubſtantive, it is put before the verb, and the pronoun *il* or *elle* for the ſingular; *ils* or *elles* for the plural are put after; as, *votre père parle-t-il Anglois?* does your father ſpeak Engliſh? *votre ſœur eſt-elle mariée?* is your ſiſter married?

Rule 4. *With pronouns.*—By putting the pronoun immediately before the verb, whether the ſentence be affirmative, negative, or interrogative; as, je *lui* parle, I ſpeak to him; tu *lui* parles; il *lui* parle, *affirmative.*—Je ne *lui* parle pas, I do not ſpeak to him; tu ne *lui* parles pas; il ne *lui* parle pas, *ne-*

gative.—*Lui* parlé-je? do I ſpeak to him? *lui* parles-tu? *lui* parle-t-il? *interrogative.*—Ne *lui* parlois-je pas? ne *lui* parlois-tu pas? ne *lui* parloit-il-pas? *negative, interrogative* and *pronoun* together.

Obſervation.—In the compound tenſes, you apply theſe rules with the auxiliary *avoir* or *être*, as if there was no other verb, becauſe the participle is put the laſt; ex. j'ai *parlé*, je n'ai pas *parlé*, ai-je *parlé*, je ne lui ai pas *parlé*, ne lui ai-je pas *parlé*.

EXERCISE upon the preceding Rules.

N.B. If your pupil is too young to do this exerciſe, paſs it over for ſome time, and the next alſo, if he does not know the irregular verbs.—The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, have reference to the four rules above.

You know the king; you do not know the king; do you
1 *connoître* *roi* 1 2 *roi* 3
know the king? you know him; you do not know him; do
2 4 *le* 1 2 4 *le*
you know him? he ſells his horſe; he does not ſell his horſe;
3 4 *le* 1 *vendre cheval* m 1 2 *ſon*
does he ſell his horſe? he does not ſell it; does he ſell it? has
3 1 2 4 *le* 3 4 *le*
he ſold it? they are ſick; are they ſick? they are not ſick;
4 *le* 1 *malades* 3 1 2
I will give a watch to your ſon; I will not give a watch to
donner montre f *fils* 1 2
your ſon; I have given it to your ſon; I have not given it to
1 *obſ.* 4 *l'* *fils* 1 2 4 *l'*
your ſon; I do not blame your conduct; does ſhe chuſe a fine
1 2 *blâmer* *conduite* f 3 *choiſir beau*
colour? we hold him; you do not do it well; have you an-
couleur f 1 *tenir* 4 *le* 1 2 *faire* 4 *le bien* 3 *ré-*
ſwered to their queſtions? you have tranſlated the book; but
pondre *queſtion* 1 *traduire* *livre* m *mais*
you have not tranſlated it well; do not threaten them; has he
1 2 4 *le bien* 2 *menacer* 4 *les* 3
ſpoken to them? we have pacified him; they have not par-
4 *leur* 1 *pacifier* 4 *le* 1 2 *par-*
doned me; do you look for your book? yes, I have loſt it;
donner 4 *me* 3 *chercher* *livre* *oui* 1 *perdu* 4 *le*
they do not ſing well; have you breakfaſted? he has not re-
1 2 *chanter* 2 *dejeûner* 1 2 *re-*
ceived a letter from his father; I have ſent him a book; has
cevoir de lettre *de* *père* 1 *envoyer* 4 *lui livre*
he received it? no, ſir, he has not received it; you do not
3 *recevoir* 4 *l'* *non* 1 2 4 *l'* 2

neglect your friends; have you not neglected me? the Auſ-
négliger 3 2 *negligé* 4 *me* *Au-*
trians have not ratified the treaty; but the French will force
trichiens 2 *ratifier* *traité* m *les françois* *forcer*
them to do it; have you decided the queſtion?
4 *les* *à faire* 4 *le* 3 *décider* f

EXERCISE upon the IRREGULAR VERBS.—*See p. 26.*

You will find in the grammar all the tenſes and perſons of the irregular verbs.—1, denotes the preſent of the indicative; 2, the imperfect; 3, the preterite; 4, the future; and 5, the conditional.

1.—I welcome the foreigners; he goes to ſchool; we learn
accuellir *aller à l'école* *apprendre*
French; you drink too much; they commit a great fault.
boire *trop* *commettre* *faute* f
2. I did pickle cucumbers; he concluded the treaty; ſhe did
confire des concombre *conclure* *traité* m
gather fruits; we did believe every body; you did run too
cueillir des fruits *croire* *tout le monde* *courir trop*
faſt; they did conquer Italy.—3. I wrote a letter yeſterday;
vite *conquérir l'Italie* *écrire lettre* f *hier*
he covered the table; ſhe believed what you ſaid; we read
couvrir f *croire ce qu'* *dire* *lire*
very well; you diſpleaſed the maſter; they elected a preſident;
bien *déplaire au* *élire*
we read a very curious hiſtory.—4. I will offer my ſervices;
curieux hiſtoire f *offrir*
he will ſend a ſervant; we will foreſee the danger; you will
envoyer domeſtique *prévoir* m
ſee the king to-morrow; they will prevail upon him.—5. I
voir *roi* *demain* *prévaloir ſur lui*
would open the door; he ſhould follow your advice; ſhe would
ouvrir porte f *ſuivre* *avis*
die ſoon; we would go to the country; you would know if
mourir bientôt *aller* *campagne* f *ſavoir*
they are come.—1. I relieve the poor; he foreſees the objec-
venus *sécourir* *pauvre* *prévoir*
tions; we pleaſe our ſuperiors; you deſcribe the town; they
plaire à *ſupérieur* *décrire* *ville* f
drink wine.—3. I knew my leſſon; he contradicted his bro-
boire du vin *ſavoir* *leçon* f *contrédire* *frère*
ther; ſhe took every thing; we promiſed a reward; you diſ-
prendre *tout* *promettre* *récompenſe* f *ren-*
miſſed the maid; they gathered flowers.—I know my taſk; he
voyer *ſervante* *cueillir des fleurs* *ſavoir* *tâche* f

tranſcribes your book; we diſcover the myſtery; you take well
tranſcrire *découvrir* *myſtère* m *prendre*
your meaſures; they go to London.—4. I ſhall die ſoon; he
méſure *aller* *Londres* *mourir* *bientôt*
will ſend back the horſes; ſhe will go to the play; we will
renvoyer *cheval* *aller* *comédie*
prevail upon them; you will be able to do that; they will ſee
prévaloir *pouvoir faire cela* *voir*
the queen.
reine f

EXERCISE upon the PARTICIPLES of the IRREGULAR VERBS.—*See p.* 26.

I have acquired a good fortune; he has learnt his taſk; we
acquérir f *apprendre tâche* f
have committed a fault; you have run too much; they have
commettre *faute* f *courir* *trop*
covered the bed; he had conquered his enemy; we had con-
couvrir *lit* m *conquérir* *con-*
vinced your brother; you had believed the news; they had
vaincre *croire* *nouvelle*
diſcovered the conſpiracy; I have deſcribed the whole; ſhe
découvrir *conſpiration* f *décrire* *tout*
has diſpleaſed her father; he has ſaid the truth; we have
déplaire à *dire* *vérité* f
diſſolved the parliament; you have elected an able man; they
diſſoudre *parlement* m *élire* *habil*
have read all their books; we have offered two hundred pounds
lire *offrir* *cent* *livre*
for your houſe; they have taken all the chairs of my room.
maiſon *prendre* *chaiſe* f *chambre* f

EXERCISE upon the SUBJUNCTIVE of the IRREGULAR VERBS.

I may go; he may learn; ſhe may acquire; we may drink;
aller *apprendre* *acquérir* *boire*
you may comprehend; they may believe; I might run; he
comprendre *croire* *courir*
might gather; ſhe might diſpleaſe; we might read; you might
cueiller *déplaire* *lire*
write; they might diſcover; I may ſay; he may deſcribe;
écrire *découvrir* *dire* *décrire*
we may undertake; you may exclude; they may die. I might
entréprendre *exclure* *mourir*
open; he might prevail; ſhe might ſend back; we might
ouvrir *prévaleir* *renvoyer*

laugh; you might ſubmit; they might ſubſcribe; I may know;
rire *ſe ſoumettre* *ſouſcrire* *ſavoir*
he may live; we may follow; you may ſee; they may reſolve.
vivre *ſuivre* *voir* *réſoudre*

Of the REFLECTED VERBS.

We call *reflected verbs* all thoſe which have for ſubject and object the ſame perſon or thing; ſuch as, *je m'habille*, I dreſs myſelf; *je me repents*, I repent.

Rule 1.—All reflected verbs are conjugated with two pronouns in every tenſe and perſon of the indicative and ſubjunctive moods; thus, *je me* is uſed for the firſt perſon ſingular; *tu te* for the ſecond; *il ſe*, or *elle ſe*, for the third; *nous nous* for the firſt plural; *vous vous* for the ſecond; *ils ſe*, or *elles ſe*, for the third; ex. *je me* leve, I riſe; *tu te* leves, *il ſe* leve, *nous nous* levons, *vous vous* levez, *ils ſe* levent.

Rule 2.—All reflected verbs are conjugated in Engliſh with the verb *to have* in their compound tenſes, and in French with the verb *être*; ex. je me *ſuis* levé, I *have* riſen; tu *t'es* levé, thou *haſt* riſen; il *s'eſt* levé, he *has* riſen; nous nous *ſommes* levés, we *have* riſen; vous vous *êtes* levés, you *have* riſen; ils ſe *ſont* levés, they *have* riſen.

Obſervation.—When you ſee *ſe* or *s'* before a verb in the infinitive, it is reflected in French.—The figures 1 and 2 in the following exerciſe have reference to the rules above.

EXERCISE upon the REFLECTED VERBS.

I abſtain from doing it; he ſtoops down; we bathe every
1 *s'abſtenir de le faire* 1 *ſe baiſſer* 1 *ſe baigner tous*
ſummer; you go to bed before your brother; they ſtruggle;
les étés 1 *ſe coucher avant* 1 *ſe débattre*
I retracted; the river flowed over; we diſtruſted your ſiſter;
1 *ſe dédire* *rivière* f *ſe déborder* 1 *ſe défier de*
you made haſte; they reſigned their office; I ſhall ſeize upon
1 *ſe dépêcher* 1 *ſe demettre de* 1 *s'emparer de*
his fortune; he ſhall be eager to do it; ſhe will fall aſleep;
ſa f *s'empreſſer de le faire* *s'endormir*
we will grow bold; you will catch cold; they will take root;
s'enhardir *s'enrhumer* *s'enraciner*
I would grow rich; he would diſcourſe with her; we would
s'enrichir *s'entretenir* *elle*
riſe; you would wonder; they would fly away; the flowers
ſe lever *s'envoler* *fleurs*
would blow; I have ſtealed away; ſhe has fainted away; we
s'épanouir 2 *s'eſquiver* 2 *s'évanouir*

have truſted to your father; you have found fault for nothing;
2 *ſe fier* *père* 2 *ſe formaliſer* *rien*
they have faded away; I had married; ſhe had diſtruſted me;
2 *ſe flétrir* 2 *ſe marier* 2 *ſe défier de moi*
we had made a miſtake; you had laughed at him; they had
2 *ſe méprendre* 2 *ſe moquer de lui* 2
complained of you; I have rejoiced at that news; he has re-
ſe plaindre 2 *ſe rejouir de* *nouvelle* f 2 *ſe re-*
pented his faults; we have walked in the park; you have
pentir de *fautes* 2 *ſe promener* 2
ſubmitted to their orders; they have remembered me.
ſe ſoumettre *ordre* 2 *ſe reſſouvenir de moi*

RULES to form the ADVERBS from ADJECTIVES.

Rule 1.—The adjectives which end with a vowel, become adverbs, by adding *ment* to their final; as *ſage, ſagement*; *poli, poliment*; *ingenu, ingenument*.

Rule 2.—The adjectives which end in *nt* become adverbs, by changing the final *nt* into *mment*; as: *conſtant, conſtamment*; *patient, patiemment*.

Rule 3.—The adjectives which end in any other conſonant than *nt*, become adverbs by adding *ment* to their feminine termination; as *grand, cruel*, m. *grande, cruelle*, f. *grandement, cruellement*, adverbs.—See how to make the feminine of adjectives, p. 14.

EXERCISE upon the FORMATION of ADVERBS.

My father can do that eaſily; you ſpeak freely; they act
peut faire cela 1 *aiſé* 1 *libre* *agir*
prudently; he died ſuddenly; they fight vigorouſly; he an-
2 *prudent* *mourut* 3 *ſoudain* *combattent* 3 *vigoureux* *ré-*
ſwered wiſely; do you ſpeak ſeriouſly; you ſuffer patiently;
pondit 1 *ſage* 3 *sérieux* *ſoufrez* 2 *patient*
he denied the fact abſolutely; they are happily out of danger;
nier *fait* m 1 *abſolu* 3 *heureux* *hors*
they will probably come to-day; I have eaten ſufficiently;
1 *probable* *venir aujourd'hui* *manger* 2 *ſuffiſant*
ſpeak to them ſeparately; he anſwered affirmatively; you do
parlez *leur* 1 *ſeparé* *répondre* 3 *affirmatif*
not ſpeak clearly; I am conſtantly occupied; they ſpeak figu-
3 *clair* 2 *conſtant occupé* 3 *figu-*
ratively; children are naturally inclined to pleaſure; your loſs
ratif *enfans* 3 *naturel enclins au plaiſir* *perte* f
is really great; he comes regularly; you did that ſecretly.
3 *réel* *venir* 3 *régulier* *fites cela* 3 *sécret*.

PART III.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX of ARTICLES.

THIS chapter is divided into four ſections. The firſt explains the circumſtances in which articles are uſed in both languages; the ſecond enumerates the caſes in which the article is uſed in French and not in Engliſh; the third deſcribes thoſe when, on the contrary, it is uſed in Engliſh and not in French; and the fourth contains all caſes in which both languages take no article.

SECTION I.

Caſes when Articles are uſed in French and in Engliſh.

RULE 1.—*un, une.*

The indefinite article (*un*, m. *une*, f. *a* or *an*) is uſed in both languages before a ſubſtantive ſingular, and not ſpecified; example,

a man, *of a* woman, *to a* bird, *from a* houſe.
un homme, *d'une* femme, *à un* oiſeau, *d'une* maiſon.

N.B. It is proper to make the pupil learn the rules by heart, and tranſlate them into French; alſo to explain the parts of ſpeech of at leaſt a ſentence every leſſon. This practice will make him ſoon acquainted with all the terms of the grammar, and greatly facilitate the underſtanding of the rules.

A friend cannot be known in proſperity, nor hidden in
ami ne peut connu dans la proſpérité, f *nicaché*
adverſity. Good example is *a* language which every body
*l'adverſité le bon exemple*m *langue* f *que tout le monde*
underſtands. Fortune is a capricious deity. Philoſophy is a
comprend la f *capricieux divinité* f *la philoſophie*
noble ſcience. When *a* man is once out of the way of God,
f *quand une fois hors voie* f *Dieu*
he eaſily falls from one fault into another.
aiſément tomber une faute f *dans une autre.*

A wiſe man values pleaſure very little, becauſe it is a bane
ſage homme eſtime le plaiſir m *peu parce qu'il poiſon* m
of the mind; but he values virtue much, becauſe it is *an* or-
l'eſprit mais vertu f *beaucoup parcequ' elle or-*

nament in prosperity, *a* comfort in adversity, and the source
nément f *co solation* f *source* f
of all public and private happiness.
tout *particulier bonheur* m

RULE 2.—ART. *le, la, les, the.*

The definite article (*le*, m. *la*, f. *l'*, before a vowel or an *h* mute, *les*, plural of both genders, the; *du, de la, de l', des*, of or from the; *au, à la, à l', aux*, to the;) is used in both languages before a substantive taken in a particular or an individual sense; example:

The days *of the* month of January are very short.
Les *jours* du *mois de Janvier sont très courts.*
The earth turns, and not *the* sun.
La *terre tourne, et non pas* le *soleil.*

The spring, the summer, the autumn, and the winter are the
printemps m *été* *automne* *hiver*
four seasons of the year. The sight, the hearing, the feeling,
saison *année* *vue* f *ouïe* *toucher* m
the taste, and the smell are the five natural senses. The east,
goût m *odorat* m *cinq naturel* 31 *sens* m *est*
the west, the north, and the south are the four cardinal points.
ouest *nord* m *sud* m *cardinaux*

The love of glory, the fear of shame, and the design of
amour la gloire f *crainte* f *la honte* f *dessein de*
making one's fortune, are often the cause of that valour so
faire *sa* f *souvent cause* f *cette valeur si*
much celebrated among men. The instructions of adversity
* *célébre parmi* *instructions de l'*
are wholesome, though unpleasing; the lessons of prosperity
salutaires quoique désagréable *leçon* f *de la*
are pleasing, but often pernicious; the first discover some-
agréables mais *pernicieuses* *premières découvrent*
times concealed virtues, and the other hidden vices. The air
quelque fois cachées des vertus *autre cachés des vices* *air*
of France is very healthy, and the climate temperate.
de *très sain* *climat* m *tempéré.*

RULE 3.—*a, an*, rendered by *le, la, les.*

The English use the indefinite article (*a* or *an*) before nouns of *measure, weight*, and *number*, when they want to express how much a thing is worth, or sold for; the French, on the contrary, use the definite article (*le, la, les*) in such cases; example;

A ſhilling *a* yard; ſixpence *a* pound.
Un chelin la *verge* *ſix ſous* la *livre*
as if it was a ſhilling the yard, ſixpence the pound.

I ſell ſugar for five guineas *a* hundred weight; coffee at
vendre ſucre m * *cinq* *guinée* *cent* m *péſant* *le caffé* *
ſeven ſhillings *a* pound, and tobacco at threepence *an* ounce.
chelin *livre* f *tabac* m *ſous* *once*

Corn is ſold for two crowns *a* buſhel. This ribband coſt
le bled ſe vend * *écus* *boiſſeau* m *ce ruban couter*
a ſhilling *a* yard. This cheeſe coſt ſeven-pence *a* pound. Good
chelin m *verge* f *ce fromage couter* *ſept ſou* *livre* f *bon*
wine is ſold for five ſhillings *a* bottle. Bread coſts two pence
vin 9 *ſe vend* * *bouteille* f *pain* 9 *deux*
a pound. Beer is ſold for three pence *a* pot.
la biere ſe vend * *trois* *pot* m

How much *a* pound? how much *a* yard? how much *a*
combien *livre* f *verge*
dozen?
douzaine f

SECTION II.

Caſes when Articles are uſed in French, and not in Engliſh.

RULE 4.—*le, la, les,* not *the.*

☞ The definite article *(le, la, les)* is uſed in French, and not in Engliſh, before all ſubſtantives taken in the whole extent of their ſignification; example;
Virtue is amiable. Vice is odious.
La vertu eſt aimable *le* vice eſt odieux

N.B. The rules marked thus ☞ are the moſt eſſential, and muſt be learnt by heart. I ſhould adviſe to make the pupil go firſt through them alone; and after to begin the ſyntax a ſecond time, and then to do all the rules in the ſame order as they are ſet down in the book.

Clemency, wiſdom, and courage, are finer ornaments in a
clémence f *ſageſſe* f *courage* m *de plus beau ornément dans*
prince than the jewels with which he is covered. Cuſtom is
que *joyau* *dont* *couvert* *uſage*
the legiſlator of languages. Charity is the greateſt of all
légiſlateur m *langue* *charité* f *la plus grande*
chriſtian virtues. Hiſtory, geography, and mathematics, are
chrétiennes vertu f *hiſtoire* f *géographie* f *mathématique*

neceſſary ſciences. Pride and vanity are often the ſources of
néceſſ aire ſcience orgeuil vanité f *ſouvent ſource*
many misfortunes. Heroes have their fits of fear, and cowards
pluſieurs malheurs héros leurs moment de crainte lâche
their brave moments. Intemperance and idleneſs are the
moment de bravoure intempérance pareſſe f
two moſt dangerous enemies of life. Eloquence, painting,
deux plus dangéreux ennemi vie f *peinture* f
ſculpture and poetry belong to the imagination.
f *poëſie* f *appartenir*

RULE 5.—*le, la, les,* before names of kingdoms.

☞ 1. The definite article *(le, la, les)* is uſed in French, and not in Engliſh, before the names of kingdoms, countries, and provinces; example;

France, England, and Spain are three great kingdoms.
La France, l'Angleterre, et l'Eſpagne ſont trois grands royaumes

2. Nevertheleſs, theſe nouns take no articles, when they are preceded by the prepoſition *en*; example;

I am going *to* France. He lives *in* Spain.
Je vais en *France il demeure* en *Eſpagne.*

3. They are uſually preceded by the prepoſition *de,* inſtead of the definite article *du, del'*, or *dela,* when they are the latter of two ſubſtantives, and expreſs the country of the firſt, and alſo when they come after the verb *venir*; example;

Burgundy wine. Spaniſh wool. I come from Ruſſia.
Le vin de *Bourgogne la laine* d'*Eſpagne. Je viens* de *Ruſſie*

In this caſe the nouns of kingdoms and provinces may be conſidered as adjectives, uſed to ſpecify the noun antecedent.—See for more explanation the ſame rule in the grammar *.

2 I like to travel; I was laſt year in Italy; I come now
aimer à voyager l'an dernier Italie venir à preſent
from Pruſſia; I ſhall ſtay this winter in England; but I
Pruſſe reſter cet hiver m *Angleterre*
ſhall go next ſpring to Germany.
aller printems prochain en Allemagne

1. Europe, Aſia, Africa, and America, are the four
Aſie Afrique Amérique quatre
parts of the world.—3. The kingdoms of France, Spain,
partie monde m *royaume Eſpagne*

---

* *There are ſome nouns of kingdoms and provinces, which are always preceded by an article in all caſes; ſuch are,* le Mexique, le Canada, le Bengal, le Perche, l'Anjou, le Maine.

and England are very powerful.—1. Sicily is the granary of
Angleterre très puiſſant Sicile f *grénier* m
Italy, and Italy the garden of Europe.—3. I come from
l'Italie jardin de l' venir
Ruſſia, and I go next ſpring to America.—1. Tou-
Ruſſie j' irai au printems prochain en
raine, Anjou, and Normandy are three fruitful provinces of
Normandie f *fertile*
France.—1. I ſet out for Italy next week.—3. My father
partir * *Italie ſemaine*
comes from Switzerland.
venir Suiſſe

RULE 6.—le, la, les, before adjectives.

The definite article *(le, la, les)* is uſed in French before all adjectives not attended by a ſubſtantive; example;
J'aime mieux le *noir que* le *rouge.*
I like black better than red

Obſerve, that all adjectives ſubſtantively uſed are maſculine in French.

Good and bad ſeem to be blended together through all
*bons méchans paroître * mêlés enſemble dans toute la*
nature, and ſometimes to be confounded with each other.
quelquefois confondre l'un avec l'autre
White and black are two oppoſite colours. Green hurts
blanc noir opposé couleur f *verd bleſſer*
the ſight leſs than red.
vue f *moins que rouge*

The wiſe man ſeekeſt wiſdom, but the fool deſpiſeth un-
*ſage * chercher ſageſſe* f *fou* m *mépriſer rai-*
derſtanding. Newton ſays, that there are ſeven primitive
ſon f *dire (ir) il y a ſept*
colours called, orange colour, red, yellow, green, blue, in-
couleur f *appellées * rouge, jaune, vert, bleu, in-*
digo, and violet.
digo

RULE 7.—du, de la, des, ſome.

☞ The partitive article *(du,* m. *de la,* f. *del'* before a vowel or an *h* mute; *des,* plural of both genders) is uſed in French before a ſubſtantive, when we want to expreſs an indeterminate number or portion of a thing. This article anſwers to the Engliſh word *ſome,* expreſſed or underſtood; example;
Give me *ſome* bread, *ſome* meat, and *ſome* eggs.
donnez-moi *du pain* de la *viande et* des *œufs*

It might be ſaid that the nouns preceded by *du*, *de la*, or *des* are in the genitive caſe, and that the word *portion* or *part* is underſtood.

Give me ſome bread and ſome butter, ſome beer or ſome
donner *pain* m *beure* m *bière* f
wine, ſome meat or ſome cheeſe; ſome muſtard and ſome vi-
vin m *viande* f *fromage* m *moutarde* f *vi-*
negar, ſome apples, ſome oranges, and ſome lemons.
naigre m *poire* *citron*

A good chriſtian conſiders the world as a place of baniſh-
chrétien conſidérer monde m *lieu* m *baniſ-*
ment, where he meets with *ſnares*, difficulties, and dangers.
ſement où trouver * *piége difficulté* *danger*
Benefits procure friends, and one good turn deſerves ano-
ſervice procurer ami *bienfait en mériter un au-*
ther. Money gives to a woman *credit*, friends, birth, and
tre *fortune* f *donner* *femme crédit* m *naiſſance* f
beauty. Spain produces *wine*, lemons, oranges, and olives.
beauté f *Eſpagne produire vin* m *citron* *et*
Give me ſome cold water and red wine.
froid eau f *rouge vin* m

RULE 8.—*de*, inſtead of *du*, *de la*, *des*.

☞ If a ſubſtantive taken in a partitive ſenſe, as before, is preceded by an adjective, the prepoſition *de* is uſed for both genders and numbers, inſtead of the partitive article *du*, *de la*, *des*; example;

Give me *ſome* good bread, good meat, and good eggs.
donnez-moi de *bon* *pain* de *bonne viande et* de *bons œufs*
not donnez-moi du bon pain, de la bonne viande, &c.

Hiſtory is full of old generals conquered by young ſol-
hiſtoire f *plein vieux général* *conquis* *jeune ſol-*
diers. Small geniuſes are generally great talkers. Great
dat *petit génie* m *généralement grand parleur*
events happened at the death of Cæſar. Good cyder is
événemens arrivèrent à *mort* f *de* *bon* *cidre* m
better than bad wine. We have in our garden fine peaches
vaut mieux mauvais vin *jardin belles pêche*
and apricots. To write well, one muſt have good ink, good
abricot pour écrire bien il faut * *encre* f
pens, and good paper. This is good bread, but bad meat.
plume f *papier voila* * *pain mauvais viande* f

RULE 9.—*Where the Article is required.*

☞ Every noun which is the ſubject or the object of a verb, muſt have in French one of the three articles, *definite*, *indefinite*, or *partitive*, of which before; except proper names and nouns preceded by any pronoun; example;

Hypocriſy is an homage which vice pays to virtue.
l'hypocriſie eſt un hommage que le *vice rend à* la *vertu*
as if it was *the* hypocriſy is an homage which *the* vice renders to *the* virtue

Honour is due to kings and magiſtrates. Let us prefer
honneur m *du roi aux magiſtrat préférons*
virtue to intereſt. Rare events ſtrike us with admiration.
vertu f *intérêt événement frapper d' admiration*
Ignorance is the ſource of errors, ſcruples, and ſuperſtition.
ignorance ſource f *erreur ſcrupule* 20 f
Glory and infamy are vain, if they are not related to the
Gloire f *infamie* f *elles* * *ſe rapporter*
real goods and evils which attend them. Iron and ſteel are
reel biens maux les accompagner fer acier
more uſeful than gold and ſilver. Remedies are often diſ-
plus utiles or argent remede ſouvent dé-
guſtful in proportion as they are ſalutary. Gold and ſilver
goutant en qu' ſalutaire or argent
cannot render man happy.
ne ſauroient rendre heureux.

RULE 10.—*The Articles muſt be repeated.*

☞ The articles *definite*, *indefinite*, and *partitive*, are repeated in French before every ſubſtantive, and agree with them in gender and number; example;

Fear and ignorance are the ſources of ſuperſtition.
La *crainte et* l'*ignorance ſont* les *ſources* de la *ſuperſtition.*

Politeneſs is not always born with us; it is often the fruit
Politeſſe f *toujours née elle ſouvent fruit* m
of cuſtom, experience, and application. If ſociety is formed
uſage del' 20 ſi ſociété f *ſe forme*
of the communication of ideas and ſentiments, ſpeech muſt
f *idée des la parole doit*
be the eſſential tie of it; being at once the pencil of wit,
en être eſſentiel lien à la fois pinceau m *eſprit*
and the interpreter of the heart. Intereſt, glory, and am-
interprête cœur m *Intérêt gloire* f
bition are the great motives of our actions. Beſides gold and
motif m *outre or*

ſilver, Europe draws from the new world pepper, ſu-
argent 5 *tirer* *nouveau monde* *poivre* m 7 *ſu-*
gar, tea, tobacco, and ſeveral other things. Vice and
cre m *thé* m *tabac* *pluſieurs autre choſe* m
virtue have contrary effects.
vertu f *contraire* 7

SECTION III.

Caſes where Articles are uſed in Engliſh, and not in French.

RULE 11.—*the*, not *le, la, les.*

The definite article *(the)* is uſed in Engliſh, and not in French, before the ordinal numbers *firſt*, *ſecond*, *third*, &c. when they come after the words *book*, *chapter*, &c. or the chriſtian name of a ſovereign; example;

Henry *the* firſt; Charles *the* ſecond; George *the* third.
Henri premier Charles ſecond George trois
Volume *the* firſt; chapter *the* ſixth; article *the* ninth.
tome premier chapitre ſix article neuf

Obſerve, that the ordinal numbers uſed in Engliſh after the chriſtian name of a ſovereign are reſolved in French into the cardinal *trois*, *quatre*, *cinq*, *ſix*, &c. the two firſt excepted; but the cardinal or ordinal are almoſt indifferently uſed after the words *livre*, *chapitre*, &c. and we can ſay *livre ſix*, or *ſixième*; *regle douze*, or *douzième*; *chapitre quatre*, or *quatrième*.

Charles *the* ſecond, ſon of Philip *the* fourth, left his king-
ſecond *fils* *Philippe* *laiſſer* *roy-*
dom to Philip *the* fifth. William the third, king of Eng-
aume *Guillaume* *roi* *Angle-*
land, married the princeſs Mary, daughter of James the
terre *épouſa* *Marie* *fille* *Jacques*
ſecond, and grand-daughter of Charles the firſt.
ſecond *petite* *fille* *premier*

Book the third, chapter the ſixth, ſection the ſecond, rule
livre m *chapitre* m *ſection* f *regle* f
the tenth, volume the fourth, article the fifth.
tôme

RULE 12.—*a*, not *un* or *une.*

The indefinite article *(a* or *an)* is uſed in Engliſh, and not in French, before a ſubſtantive which expreſſes the *titles*, *profeſſions*, *trades*, *country*, or any other attribute of the noun antecedent; example;

I am *a* Frenchman; he is *a* phyſician; he is *a* nobleman.
Je ſuis François il eſt médecin il eſt noble

Socrates was *a* philoſopher; Apelles, *a* painter; Phidias,
étoit philoſophe peintre
a ſculptor; Cicero, an orator; Livy, an hiſtorian; and Virgil,
ſculpteur Cicéron orateur Tite live hiſtorien Virgile
a poet. Harvey was a phyſician of great reputation. I am a
poëte medecin grand f
Frenchman, but my father was an Engliſhman. The beſt
François mais étoit Anglois meilleur
coffee comes from Mocha, *a* town of Arabia Felix. Was
caffé m *venir la Moque ville* f *Arabie* f *heureux*
your father *a* nobleman? No, he was *a* ſoldier. The canal
votre père étoit-il noble non ſoldat
of Briar, in the Gatinois, *a* province of France, joins the
de dans m *joindre*
Loire to the Seine. The king of Pruſſia was altogether *a*
Loire f f *roi Pruſſe à la fois*
king, *a* warrior, and *a* philoſopher.
guerrier philoſophe

RULE 13.—*a*, not *un* or *une*.

1. The indefinite article (*a* or *an*) is alſo uſed in Engliſh, and not in French, in the title of a book; example;
An hiſtory of England. *A* French grammar.
hiſtoire d'Angleterre grammaire françoiſe

2. After the word *what*, uſed to ſhew ſurpriſe; example;
What *a* noiſe you make! What *a* dreadful news!
quel bruit vous faites quelle fâcheuſe nouvelle

3. Before a ſubſtantive uſed to ſpecify or explain the noun preceding; example;
I come from L'Aigle, *a* town of Normandy.
Je viens de L'Aigle ville de Normandie

1. A Roman hiſtory from the foundation of Rome to
Romain 31 *hiſtoire* f *depuis fondation* f *juſqu'à*
the deſtruction of the Roman empire.—2. What *an* unhappy
f m *quelle fâcheuſe*
ſituation is that which obliges a father in his own defence to
f *celle obliger père dans propre* f *à*
expoſe the failings of his children.—3. The honours of tri-
expoſer faute enfans honneur tri-
umph were decreed to Cæſar, *an* honour he well deſerved.
omphe décerner honneur bien méritoit

3. Raphael excelled in expreſſion, a rare talent in painters.
excelloit dans m *chez les peintre*

SECTION IV.

Caſes in which no Article is uſed in either Language.

RULE 14.—*No Article before proper Names.*

☞ No article is uſed in either language before the word *Dieu*, nor before the proper names of *men*, *women*, *towns*, *days*, *months*, or *heathen Gods*; example;

God is merciful. Peter is dead.
Dieu eſt miséricordieux Pierre eſt mort
not *le* Dieu, nor *le* Pierre eſt mort

We muſt except from this rule, 1. many Italian authors, ſuch as *le Taſſe*, *l'Arioſte*, &c. 2. proper names uſed to denote an individual diſtinction; ſuch as *l'Athalie de Racine*, *la Mérope de Voltaire*.—3. The proper names in the plural, which take the definite article; ſuch as, *les Cicérons ſont rares*, *les Homères*, *les Virgiles*, *les Démoſtènes*.

Ariſtotle and Plato flouriſhed in the age of Philip and
Platon fleurir ſiecle m *Philippe*
Alexander. London and Paris are the two greateſt capitals
d'Alexandre Londres plus grandes f
in Europe. Come and ſee me Friday or Saturday. September
*de venez * me voir Vendredi Samedi Septembre*
and October are two fine months in England. Jupiter, Mars,
Octobre beau mois Angleterre
and Venus were heathen divinities. Demoſthenes and Cicero
payenne divinité 7
were two great orators; the firſt flouriſhed at Athens, and
grand orateur premier fleurit Athénes
the ſecond at Rome.

RULE 15.—*No Article before Pronouns.*

No article is uſed in either language before a ſubſtantive preceded by any pronoun whatever; example;

My book. This watch. What news.
Mon livre cette montre quelle nouvelle

The pronouns *quelqu'un*, ſomebody; *pluſieurs*, many; *perſonne*, nobody; and *rien*, nothing; which are uſed without a ſubſtantive, take no article before them; example; *pluſieurs le diſent*, many ſay ſo; not *les* pluſieurs le diſent.

My brother and ſiſter learn geography. Nobody be-
frère *ſœur apprendre (ir) géographie* f *perſonne ne*
comes debauched or virtuous on a ſudden. Nothing can be
devenir débauché *vertueux tout d'un coup* *rien* *ne peut*
more intolerable than a fortunate fool. Whoever ſpares the
plus inſuportable *heureux ſot* m *quiconque épargner*
bad, does harm to the good. This watch is new; give it
méchans *tort* *bons* *montre* f *neuf* *là*
to your ſiſter.
ſœur

RULE 16.—*de* after *ſorte, genre,* &c.

☞ No article (but the preposition *de,* or *d'*) is uſed in French, after the words *ſorte, genre, eſpece, mélange,* or any other of the ſame ſignification; example;

Man is expoſed to all ſorts of infirmities.
l'homme eſt ſujet *à toutes ſortes* d' *infirmités*

N.B. This rule is of a very great extent, and requires a particular attention.

There are two *ſorts* of curioſities, the one of intereſt,
il y a *ſorte* f *curioſité* *l'une* *intérêt*
which incites us to deſire to learn what may
nous porter *à déſirer d'apprendre ce qui pouvoir (ir)*
be uſeful to us; and the other of pride, which proceeds
nous être utile *l'autre* *orgueil* *venir*
from the deſire of knowing what others are ignorant of.
déſir de ſavoir ceque les autres • *ignorent* •
Old age is a *ſort* of tyrant, who forbids under pain of
vielleſſe f *ſorte* f *défendre ſous peine*
death all the pleaſures of youth. Politeneſs is a *mixture*
mort f *plaiſirs* m *jeuneſſe* f *politeſſe* f *mélange* m
of diſcretion, complacency, and circumſpection. Praiſes are
de complaiſance *louange*
a *ſort* of tribute that is paid to true merit. There is in
ſorte *tribut qu'on* *paye* *vrai mérite* m *il y a dans*
goodneſs a *kind* of magnetiſm which attracts all men to itſelf.
bonté f *ſorte* f *aimant* *attirer* *ſoi*
The hieroglyphics of the Egyptians were figures of men
Egyptien
birds, animals, and reptiles.
oiſeaux *reptils*

RULE 17.—*Tranſpoſition of Words.*

☞ No article (but the preposition *de,* or *d'*) is uſed in French before the latter of two ſubſtantives, when it expreſſes the *nature, matter, ſpecies, qualities,* or *country* of the firſt.

The Engliſh put often the genitive the firſt. This tranſpoſition of words is not allowed in French, and the order muſt be reverſed; example;

Burgundy wine. Golden watch. A chamber-maid.
du vin de *Bourgogne* *une montre* d'*or* *une femme* de *chambre*

as if it was, ſome wine of Burgundy, a watch of gold; and ſo on for others.

The galleries of the houſe of commons are ſupported by
gallerie f *chambre* f *commune* *ſoutenir*
ſlender iron pillars, ornamented with corinthian capitals.
de petit pillier fer *ornés* *de corinthiens chapitaux*
Burgundy wine is very dear in England. The Engliſh
bourgogne vin m *cher* *Angleterre* *Anglois*
cannot manufacture their ſuperfine cloth without
ne pouvoir (ir) *manufacturer* *fin* *drap* *ſans*
Spaniſh wool. I wear always *ſilk*-ſtockings in ſummer.
Eſpagne laine f *porter toujours ſoie* *bas* 7 *en* *été*
At the firſt day of every parliament, four repreſentatives
* *le premier* *chaque parlement* *quatre* *répréſentant*
of the city of London appear in ſcarlet-gowns, and ſit near
cité f *Londres paroître* *écarlate robe* 7 *s'aſſeient au-*
the ſpeaker.
près du préſident

Socrates' wiſdom and Achilles' valour are celebrated in the
ſageſſe f *valeur* f *célébré*
hiſtorians' writings. The character of Eſop's fables is ſim-
hiſtorien *écrit* m *caractère* m *Eſop* f
ple nature. O happineſs! our being's end, for thee we live,
f *bonheur* *être* *fin* f *vivre*,
for thee we dare to die.
oſer * *mourir*

RULE 18.—*Prepoſition* de.

☞ No article (but the prepoſition *de*) is uſed in French, after the following adverbs of quantity, ſcarcity, or excluſion;

abondance,	plenty.	*pas* or *point*,	no.
aſſez,	enough.	*peu*,	little.
autant,	as much.	*plus*,	more.
beacoup,	much.	*rien*,	nothing.
combien,	how many.	*tant*,	ſo many.
jamais,	never.	*trop*,	too much.
moins,	leſs.		

Alſo after the words *nombre*, number; *quantité*, quantity; *livre*, pound; *mésure*, meaſure; *aune*, ell; *verge*, yard; *boiſſeau*, buſhel; and after any other words of quantity; example;

Much bread and little meat. More prudence.
beaucoup de *pain et peu* de *viande plus* de *prudence*

A pound of cheeſe. A buſhel of coals.
une livre de *fromage un boiſſeau* de *charbon*

Nevertheleſs, the article is uſed after *la plupart*, the moſt part; and after *bien*, uſed in the ſenſe of *beaucoup*. Thus we ſay, *il a bien* des *amis*, with an article; and *il a beaucoup d'amis*, without any article; he has many friends.

Thoſe who govern are like celeſtial bodies, which have
ceux gouverner cæleſte corps 7
much brightneſs and no reſt. Few people have prudence
beaucoup éclat repos peu perſonne
enough to avoid bad company, and to diſtruſt
aſſez pour éviter mauvais compagnie f 9 *pour ſe-défier*
themſelves. Mothers have often too much indulgence for
d'eux mêmes mère ſouvent trop
their children. The few veſtiges which remain from the
enfans le peu reſter
brilliant actions of the Greeks and Romans, have been re-
f *Grec des Romains rap-*
corded by Plutarch and ſeveral other hiſtorians. Authors
portées Plutarque pluſieurs autres hiſtorien auteur
derive more eloquence, force, and grandeur, from the choice
plus 21 *choix* m
and diſpoſition of words, than from any other thing. Few
de la mot que d'aucune choſe f *peu*
things are neceſſary to make a wiſe man happy. Give me
choſe ſuffiſent pour rendre ſage heureux donnez-moi
two hundred pounds of butter, five yards of ribband, and a
cent livre beure verge ruban
great quantity of coals.
quantité f *charbon*

RULE 19.—*de*, after an adjective.

☞ No article (but the prepoſition *de* or *d'*) is uſed before a ſubſtantive governed in the genitive caſe by an adjective or a participle, followed in Engliſh by the prepoſition *of*, *from*, *by*, or *with*; example;

Full *of* charms. Endowed *with* virtue. Eſteemed *by* all.
plein de *charmes doué* de *vertu eſtimé* de *tous*.

Human life is full of diſappointments. To die for one's
humain vie f *plein revers mourir ſon*

country, is a death full *of* charms. A noble but confuſed
pays *mort* f *charme* 31 *confuſe*
thought is a diamond covered *with* duſt. If fortune has
pensée *diamant* m *couvert* *poussière* f
bleſſed you *with* her gifts, if beſides you are endowed *with*
vous a favorisé *dons* *outre cela* *doué*
wit and judgment, be not puffed up *with* pride, and do not
esprit *jugement* *ne vous enflez* * *orgueil*
contemn others. Nobody is fit for friendſhip, who is not
mépriser les autres *personne* 116 *propre* *amitié*
endowed *with* virtue. Whoever attempts the ſacred perſon
doué *vertu* *quiconque attaquer* *sacrée personne* f
of a king, is guilty of high treaſon.
roi *coupable haute trahison*

RULE 20.—*No Article is uſed.*

1. No article is uſed in either language, before a noun which forms but one idea with the verb antecedent; which is known when they are or could be both expreſſed by one word in Engliſh; example;

To envy. To viſit. To pity; and ſo on.
porter envie *rendre visite* *avoir pitié*

2. Before a noun which forms a kind of adverb with the prepoſition antecedent; ſuch are *avec ardeur*, for *ardemment*, with eagerneſs; *sans conſidération*, without conſideration; and when the ſubſtantive is not particulariſed.

3. Before the cardinal numbers, *one*, *two*, *three*, *four*, *five*, *ſix*, &c. example;

Lend me twenty pounds. I have ſix oranges.
prêtez-moi *vingt livres* *J'ai six oranges*

The article ſhould be uſed before the cardinal numbers, if the noun to which they are joined had a fixed number; ſuch as, *les quatre ſaiſons*, the four ſeaſons; *les neuf muſes*, the nine muſes; and alſo if it was ſpecified; as, *les deux lettres que j'ai écrites*, the two letters which I have written; *le dix de Janvier*, the tenth of January.—Theſe exceptions are not difficult, becauſe they are the ſame in both languages.

1. Thoſe who ſpeak without reflection are expoſed to many
ceux *sans* *exposés*
errors.—2. We often do by ſelf-love what we believe to
erreur *faire amour propre ceque* *croire*
do by good nature.—3. Bibliographers arrange the books in
bienveillance *bibliographe* *livre*
five principal claſſes; divinity, laws, hiſtory, fine-letters,
cinq *classe* f *théologie* f *loi* f *histoire* f *lettre* f

and arts.—3. The mouth of the Danube has five large
embouchure m *grand*
canals in the Euxin ſea.—3. The temple of Solomon was
canal *pont-Euxin* m 14
begun four hundred and eighty years after the departure
commencé *cent* * *quatre-vingt* *depart* m
of the Iſraelites from Egypt.—1. I have pity on the poor.
Egypte *pitié* *des*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the ARTICLES.

9. Secrecy is the key of prudence, and the ſanctuary of
ſecret m *clef* f 4 *ſanctuaire* m
wiſdom. Cares and infelicities are often the attendants of
ſageſſe f 4 *ſoin* 9 *malheur* *ſouvent* *compagnons*
greatneſs. Lewis the fourteenth was the protector of ſci-
grandeur f *Louis* 14 *protecteur*
ences. The Engliſh language abounds with writings ad-
Anglois *langue* f *abonder* *en* *écrits* *ad-*
dreſſed to the imagination and feelings; the inventive
dreſſés *aux ſentimens* *créateur*
power of Shakeſpear, the ſublime conceptions of Milton, the
eſprit m 14 *pensées*
ſtrength and harmony of Pope, the delicacy of Addiſon, and
force f *harmonie* *délicateſſe* f
the pathetic ſimplicity of Sterne, may be compared with the
pathétique ſimplicité f *peuvent comparées* *avec*
beſt authors among the ancients.
meilleur auteur *parmi*

Some thieves having broken into a gentleman's houſe,
voleurs *entré* *monſieur* 17
went to the footman's bed, and told him, that if he moved,
allèrent *domeſtique* *lit* 17. *lui dirent* *remuer*
he was a dead man. I am ſure, replied he, that if I move,
mort *répliquer*
I am alive.
en vie

Envy judges of actions, by the perſons who perform
envie 9 *juger* *actions* *par* *perſonne*
them; but equity judges of perſons by their actions. When
les 48 *l'équité* *juger* *leur* *quand*
God deprives us of any thing that is dear to us, ſuch as
14 *nous priver* *quelque* *nous eſt cher* *tel que*
wife, children, friends, or fortune, we muſt ſubmit
femme *enfans* *amis* *fortune* *devons* *nous y ſoumettre*

without murmur or complaint. Mutual benevolence is
murmure *mutuel bienveillance* f
the bond of ſociety; without it, life is grievous, full
lien m *ſociété* f *ſans elle vie* 9 *à charge pleine* 19
of fear, and void of comfort. Few people deny the
crainte *ſans* * *conſolation* *peu* 18 *gens* *nient*
truth of the goſpel, and yet many live as if it was not
vérité f *évangile* *cependant* *vivent comme ſ'il*
true. The Portugueſe ſend every year a fleet to
vrai *Portugais* *envoyer* *tous les ans* *flotte* f
Braſil, to bring cotton, amber, ſaltpetre, and many other
Bréſil m *pour apporter* 7 *ambre* m *pluſieurs*
things. Cæſar's firſt attempt on Britain was fifty-five
choſe 17 *attaque* f *Brétagne* f *cinquante cinq*
years before Jeſus Chriſt. Poſſeſſion without right is in
avant f 9 *droit* 20
many caſes of property a better title than right without
pluſieurs cas de propriété *meilleur titre* m *le droit* m *ſans*
poſſeſſion; but it is not the ſame in caſes of reſpect and
20 *mais ce n'eſt la même choſe* *de*
conſideration. Sins particularly forbidden in the goſpel,
21 *péché particulièrement défendus* *évangile*
are ſenſual luſts, covetouſneſs, anger, envy, hatred,
les appetits des ſens, avarice 10 *colère* f *envie* *haine* f
pride, vanity, theft, and falſehood. The action of the
orgeuil f *vol* m *fauſſeté* f 2 *du*
great Scipio, when he added to the fortune of a young
grand Scipion quand *ajouta* f *jeune*
princeſs he had taken priſoner, all the money which her
princeſſe qu'il faite *argent* m
friends brought him to ranſom her, has not done him leſs
amis *lui apporter pour ſa ranſom* *ne lui a pas fait moins*
honour than his famous conqueſts.
18 *honneur* *fameux conquête* f

Geography gives a true deſcription of the terreſtrial globe;
géographie f *donner vrai* f *terreſtre* m
the globe has an imaginary axis, and is ſurrounded with
axe m *environné de*
imaginary circles; the axis is a line paſſing through the center
imaginaires circles *ligne* f *qui paſſe par centre* m
of the earth, upon which the whole earth turns, like the
terre f *ſur lequel* *toute la* *tourner comme*
axle-tree of a wheel. Machiavel lays down for maxims in
eſſieu m *roue* f *établir*
the art of governing, artifice, ſtratagem, deſpotic power,
gouverner 9 m *deſpotiſme* m
injuſtice, and irreligion. Chriſtopher Columbus, who diſ-
10 *Chriſtophe Colombe* *dé-*

covered America in 1472, was a Genoeſe, a great ſeaman,
couvrir (ir) *en* *12* *genois* *matelot*
and the beſt geographer of his age.
géographe *ſiécle* m

CHAPTER II.

OF SUBSTANTIVES.

RULE 21.—Two Subſtantives in the ſame Caſe.

☞ When there is a *conjunction* between two nouns, they muſt be put in the ſame caſe; and if there is a *prepoſition* before the firſt, it muſt be repeated before all others; example;

You are in a ſtate *of* doubt, fear, and diſtruſt.
vous êtes dans un état de *doute*, de *crainte*, *et* de *défiance*
as if it was, of doubt, of fear, and of diſtruſt.

Criticiſm examines the merit of literary productions under
critique f *examiner* *mérite* m *litteraire* *production* *ſous*
the three general heads of thought, arrangement, and ex-
point de pensée *ordre*
preſſion. One day ſpent in the practice of virtue and re-
un jour paſsé *pratique* f *vertu* f
ligion, is better than a whole life ſpent in impiety and
f *vaut mieux que* *vie* f *paſsée* *l'impiété*
wickedneſs. Juſtice is obedience to written laws and conſti-
méchanceté f f 9 *obéiſſance* *écrit* *loi* f f
tution. Men of corrupted hearts and ill lives
9 *corrumpu cœur* m *mauvaiſe vie*
eaſily believe that there is no more virtue, probity, and ſince-
croient aisément il n'y a pas plus 18 *vertu probité*
rity in others than in themſelves. The rules of civility are
les autres *eux-mêmes* *regle* 2 *bonnéteté*
thoſe of decency and good manners.
celles *bienséance* f *mœurs* f

RULE 22.—Genitive Caſe.

☞ The latter of two ſubſtantives is generally put in the genitive caſe in French, whether it is in the genitive or dative in Engliſh; example;

The impious are enemies *to* virtue.
les impies ſont les ennemis de la *vertu*—not *à la* vertu

Our conſciouſneſs *of* good and evil ſhews us what
connoiſſance *bien* m *mal nous montre* *quel*
ought to be the rule to govern our actions. Pleaſure is
doit *regle* f *pour diriger* *plaiſir* m

often an enemy *to* reaſon and virtue. The corruption
ſouvent l' *raiſon* f *vertu* f 21 f 9
of the heart is often the cauſe of the corruption of the
cœur m *cauſe* f f
judgement. The Peru has rich mines of gold, ſilver, and
jugement m *Pérou* m 7 *d' or* *argent*
diamonds.
diamant

RULE 23.—*Noun in the Dative.*

1. When two ſubſtantives are joined together, ſo as to make a compound word; that which is the firſt in Engliſh is put the ſecond in French, and is uſually preceded by the prepoſition *à*, when it expreſſes the uſe of the firſt; example;

Silk-worms. A wind-mill. A patch-box.
des vers à *ſoie* *un moulin* à *vent* *boîte* à *mouches*

as if it was, worms to ſilk, a mill to wind, a box to patch.

2. It is preceded by *au*, *à la*, or *aux*, when it is the name of ſomething good to eat or drink; example;

The hay-market. The rabbit-man.
Le marché au *foin* *l'homme* aux *lapins*

1. Many pretend that battles are not ſo bloody ſince the
prétendre *batailles* f *ſanglant depuis*
invention of fire-arms.—2. Where is the cream-pot?—1.
f *feu armes* *où* *créme* f
There are a great many ſilk-worms in Italy.
il y a * *beaucoup* 18 *ſoie* *ver* *Italie*

1. Go into the dining-room, the company is there.—2. I
allez *manger ſalle* f *compagnie y eſt*
have been to the fiſh-market, however I have bought no
poiſſon marché *cependant je n'ai acheter* *de*
fiſh, becauſe it was too dear.—2. The oyſter-woman is at
parcequ'il *trop cher* *huitres femme* f
the door.—2. I have broken the milk-pot.—1. I keep
porte f *caſſer* *lait* m *pot* m *garder*
always fire-arms in my bed-room for my ſafety dur-
feu des armes *coucher chambre* f *ſureté* f *pen-*
ing the night; I have no gun-powder at preſent; thus my
dant *nuit* f *n'ai point de canon poudre* *à* *ainſi*
fire-arms are uſeleſs.
inutiles

RULE 4.—*Collective General.*

A noun collective general (ſuch as *peuple*, *nation*, *flotte*, *armée*, &c.) requires that the verb, the adjective or pronouns

which have reference to it, be always put in the ſingular in French; example;

The army of the confederates is very numerous.
l'armée des confédérés eſt *très nombreuſe*

Is it neceſſary that the whole univerſe ſhould arm itſelf to
eſt-il néceſſaire tout l'univers s'arme pour
deſtroy one man? A drop of water is enough to kill him.
détruire goute f *d'eau ſuffit pour le tuer*
The ſociety of men would ſoon be overturned, if every one
ſociété f *bientôt détruite chacun*
could with impunity take from another what he ſhould
pouvoir (ir) impunément ôter à un autre cequ'
think proper. The people wiſh for peace; but the parlia-
juger à propos peuple m *déſirer paix* f *parlé-*
ment, who know beſt the intereſts of the nation, has voted for
ment m *connoître mieux* f *voter*
the continuation of the war. The grand fleet ſet ſail
f *guerre* f *flotte* f *mettre à la voile*
yeſterday. The enemy preſented themſelves before the gates
hier préſenter ſe devant porte
of our town, and began the attack on Tueſday; our garriſon
ville commencer attaque * *mardi garniſon* f
made a ſally on Thurſday, and obliged them to raiſe the ſiege.
ſortie f * *jeudi obliger* 48 *à lever* m

RULE 25.—Collective Partitive.

The verbs, the adjectives and pronouns which have reference to a collective partitive (ſuch as *nombre*, *foule*, *beaucoup*, &c.) agree in gender and number with the noun following; example;
A great number of friends remained attached to me.
un grand *nombre* d'amis me *reſterèrent* attachés.

If, however, the collective partitive was preceded by the definite article *le*, *la*, *les*, it ſhould govern the adjective, the pronoun and the verb in the ſingular number; example;
The number of the inhabitants amount to 1000 men.
le *nombre* des habitans *monte à* 1000 *hommes* *

The crowd of ſoldiers, who came, obliged us to retire.
foule f *ſoldats*, *venir obliger nous à nous retirer*

---

* *Unleſs* la plupart *be followed by a noun ſingular, the verb which comes after it, is always put in the plural; example; la plupart du monde le* croit: *la plupart le* croient; *la plupart des jeunes gens le* croient.

A multitude of inhabitants abandon their country. A band
f *habitant* *abandonner* *pays* *troupe*
of children run after him.
enfans *courir* *après*

A crowd of nymphs crowned with flowers ſwarm behind
foule *nymphe* *couronnées de fleur* *derrière*
the car of the goddeſs. When the unbelievers invaded
char m *déeſſe* f *quand* *infidelle* *envahir*
Spain, an innumerable multitude of people retired into
Eſpagne ſ *innombrable* f *perſonne* *ſe rétirerent*
Aſturias, where they proclaimed Pelagius for their king.
les Auſturies *où* *proclamer* *Pélage* *roi*

CHAPTER III.

OF ADJECTIVES.—*Page* 14.

THIS chapter is divided into four ſections. The firſt treats of the concord of adjectives; the ſecond, of their government; the third, of the adjectives of dimenſion; and the fourth, of comparatives and ſuperlatives.

SECTION I.

Of the Concord and Place of Adjectives.

RULE 26.—*Adjectives are declinable.*

☞ All adjectives are declinable in French, and agree in gender and number with the ſubſtantive to which they are joined or relative; example;

Good bread meat and apples.
de bon *pain*, *de* bonne *viande* *de* bonnes *pommes*

Marriage is the higheſt ſtate of friendſhip; it leſſens
m *plus grand état* m *amitié* *diminuer*
our cares by dividing them, and doubles our pleaſures by
ſoins *en diviſant les* 57 *doubler* *plaiſir par*
mutual participation. Our miniſter has a profound judge-
mutuel f *miniſtre* *profond* *juge-*
ment, an invariable induſtry, and a very extenſive know-
ment m *induſtrie* f *très étendu* *con-*
ledge of the intereſts of foreign courts. The victory
noiſſance f *intêret* *étranger* *cour* f *victoire* f
which Cæſar obtained in the plains of Pharſalia, was baneful
14 *gagna* *plaine* f *Pharſale* *fut* *fâcheux*

to his country, pernicious to the Romans, and diſmal to
pays m *pernicieux* *Romains* *déſaſtreux*
human nature.
humain f

RULE 27.—Adjective agrees with the laſt Noun.

If an adjective or a participle come in Engliſh immediately before ſeveral ſubſtantives, they are put after in French, and uſually agree with the laſt ſubſtantive only; example;

Lewis XIV. had in France an *abſolute* power and
Louïs XIV. avoit en France un pouvoir et une autorité
authority.
abſolue
or *Louïs XIV. avoit en France une autorité et un pouvoir* abſolu

If the adjective was any of thoſe mentioned in the rule 30, it ſhould go before the ſubſtantives, and ſhould be repeated before each; example;

Louïs XIV. avoit une grand *pouvoir et une* grande *autorité.*

Garrick played with a charming taſte and nobleneſs. Silla
réprésenter *charmant gout* m *nobleſſe* f
acquired in Rome an abſolu*te* power and authority. The
acquit à *abſolu pouvoir* m f
Engliſh fight on ſea with a wonderful courage and in-
combattre *mer* *ſurprenant* m
trepidity. In moſt of the courtiers we find nothing but
f *la plupart* *courtiſan ne trouver* * *qu'*
an affect*ed* politeneſs and ſincerity. She has the mouth
affecté *politeſſe* f f *bouche* f
and eyes ſhut.
yeux fermé

RULE 28.—Adjectives in the Plural.

1. If there is a verb between them, the adjectives or participles which have reference to ſeveral ſubſtantives, are always put in the plural, though the nouns be in the ſingular; example;

His father and brother are very learned.
ſon père et ſon frère ſont très ſavans pl. m.
His mother and ſiſter are handſome.
ſa mère et ſa ſœur ſont belles pl. f.

2. If the ſubſtantives are of different genders, the adjectives and participles which come after the verb, and have reference to them, are always put in the plural maſculine, becauſe t ey agree with the moſt worthy gender; example;

Your brother and ſiſter are prudent and wiſe.
votre frère et votre ſœur ſont prudens *et* ſages pl. m.

2. Modeſty and diſintereſtedneſs deſerve to be *praiſed*
modeſtie f *déſintéreſſement mériter d' louer*
and admired.—2. The room and the cloſet were
admirer *chambre* f *cabinet* m
open, but the window and the drawer were *ſhut*.—2. Men
ouvert *fénêtre* f *tiroir* *fermer*
and women are mortal.—1. My mother and ſiſter are dead.
femme *mortel* *mère* *ſœur* *mort*
2. His ſon and daughter are happy.—2. Your courage
fils *fille* *heureux* *courage* m
and boldneſs ſeem aſtoniſhing to me.—2. Pride and
hardieſſe f *me paroîſſent étonnant* *orgueil* m
miſery are but too often united.
misère f *ne ſont que trop ſouvent* *unir*

2. Health, favour and power are common to the good
ſanté f 9 *faveur* f *pouvoir* m *commun aux bons*
and wicked, and can be taken from us;—1. but glory
méchant *peuvent nous être ôtés* *gloire* f
and virtue are ſolid, ſure, and laſting.—2. There are ſome
virtu f *ſolide* *durable* *il y a*
perſons whoſe courage and virtue need not to be ſuſtained.
perſonne m *vertu* f *ont beſoin d'être ſoutenir*

RULE 29.—*Place of Adjectives.*

When two or more adjectives refer to the ſame ſubſtantive, they are uſually placed after it, and a conjunction is put before the laſt, whether there is one or not in Engliſh; example;
A juſt and bountiful *God*. A long tedious book.
un Dieu juſte et *bienfaiſant* *un livre long* et *ennuyeux*

Great and extenſive projects joined to a wiſe execution
étendus *projet* m *joindre* *ſage* f
conſtitute the great miniſter.
faire *miniſter*

A ſhallow argument has often perſuaded perſons
foible m *ſouvent perſuader perſonnes* 7
who had not been convinced by palpable and evident
convaincus f
proofs. Courtiers often flatter themſelves that under a
preuve 7 *courtiſan ſouvent* 172 *ſe flatter* *ſous*
young liberal prince, they ſhall be able to attain to a
jeune *pourront arriver*
power which they never would hope for in the ſervice of an
poſte m *jamais n'eſpérer* * *au* m
old frugal prince. Brave and truſty men are generally
vieux m *confiant* *généralement*

humain and merciful; while men of baſe and low minds
humain *miséricordieux pendant que* *bas rampant eſprit* m
are uſually inſolent and tyrannical, when they have
ordinairement *tyrannique* *quand*
power. A plain, ſimple, and natural ſtyle is the only one
autorité 7 *uni* *naturel ſtyle* m *ſeul* *
to be recommended.
* *récommandable*

RULE 30.—*Adjective put before the Subſtantive.*

☞ The following adjectives *beau, bon, grand, gros, jeune, mauvais, méchant, meilleur, moindre, petit, ſaint, vieux*; alſo the adjectives of numbers, and the *poſſeſſive, demonſtrative*, and *indeterminate* pronouns, precede in French, as in Engliſh, the ſubſtantive to which they are joined; example;

A good boy. A good girl.
un *bon* garçon une *bonne* fille
not *un garçon* bon *une fille* bonne

A good king often loſes by the ill-conduct of
roi ſouvent perd *mauvais conduite* f
his miniſters, the affection of his ſubjects. Socrates and
miniſtre 2 *ſujet* 14
Plato were two great philoſophers. Young men hope
Plâton *philoſophe* *les jeunes gens eſpérer*
that they ſhall live long, but nobody is ſure he ſhall
vivre longtems *perſonne n'eſt qu'*
live till to-morrow. Small geniuſes are dazzled with
vivre juſqu'à demain. *Petit genie* m *éblouir de*
every thing that ſparkles, becauſe every thing is new to
tout *ce qui briller* *parceque* *tout nouveau pour*
them; great geniuſes on the contrary admire but few
eux 2 *au* *contraire n'admirer que peu* 18
things, becauſe few things appear new to them.
parceque peu *leur paroître nouvelles*
How many books have you got? I have two grammars
combien 18 *livre* * *grammaire*
and one exerciſe book. Is your father at home? No,
livre d'exercice *votre père eſt-il à la maiſon* *non*
Sir; but my mother is, and ſhe will be glad to ſee you.
mais *mère y eſt* *bien aiſe de vous voir*

RULE 31.—*Adjective put after the Subſtantive.*

☞ The adjectives not mentioned in the preceding rule, are uſually placed in French after the ſubſtantive which they qualify; example;

A *cold* weather. A *round* table. The *public* good.
un tems froid *une table* ronde *le bien* public
not *un froid tems, une ronde table, le public bien*

Humility is the baſis of chriſtian virtues. A prepoſſeſſed
humilité *baſe* f *vertu* f *chrétien* *prévenu*
mind is the ſource of innumerable errors. The public
eſprit m f *innombrable* *erreur*
good is preferable to private intereſt. Satirical minds
bien m *particulier* *intérêt* m *ſatirique* *eſprit*
are like ſmall inſects, whoſe exiſtence we ſuſpect only
comme *petits* *inſecte* 8 *dont* *ne ſoupçonner* *que*
by the efforts which they make to corrupt things. Geo-
effort *faire* *pour* *corrompre* *gé-*
graphy is the true deſcription of the terreſtrial globe. A
graphie f *vrai* f *terreſtre* *globe* m
ſilent awe, a doubtful eye, and a heſitating voice, are the
reſpect m *timide* *œil* m *tremblant* *voix* f
natural indications of a true and reſpectful love. The cen-
naturel *marque* f *vrai* *reſpectueux* *amour* m
tral fire is the phyſical cauſe of the heat of the ſubterraneous
feu m *phyſique* f *chaleur* f *ſouterrein*
ſprings.
ſource f

SECTION II.

Of the Government of Adjectives.

RULE 32.—*Adjectives which govern the Genitive.*

☞ The adjectives and participles which ſignify *plenty* or *ſcarcity*, thoſe followed in Engliſh by the prepoſition *of*, *from*, *with*, or *by*, and all thoſe which can be ſubſtantively uſed, are followed in French by the prepoſition *de* without any article; example;

Life is full *of* miſeries. I am ſatisfied *with* you.
la vie eſt pleine de *misères* *Je ſuis content* de *vous*
not *eſt pleine* des *misères*, nor *je ſuis content* avec *vous*

Nature is content *with* little. I am fatigued *with* run-
f *ſe contente* *peu* *fatigué* *cou-*
ning. He is accuſed *of* robbery. You are loaded *with* ho-
rir *accuſé* *vol* *comblé* *hon-*
nours. They are praiſe-worthy.
neur *louange digne* 17

Human life is never free *from* troubles. Moſt men are
humain 31 *vie* f *exempt* *la plupart des*
diſſatisfied *with* their condition. We are in vain endued
mécontent *douer*

with reaſon, if we are not endued *with* virtue. Xerxes being
raiſon *douer*
ſatiated *with* all the goods of the body and of fortune, and
raſſaſier *bien* m *corps* m *fortune* f
yet being not ſatisfied with them, propoſed a re-
cependant n'en étant ſatisfait *propoſer* *ré-*
ward to him who could invent a new pleaſure for
compence f *celui qui* *inventer* *nouveau plaiſir* m
him.

RULE 33.—*Adjectives which govern the Dative.*

The adjectives which denote *aptneſs*, *fitneſs*, *inclination*, *eaſe*, *readineſs*, or *any habit*, govern the noun in the dative with *a*, *au*, *à la*, or *aux*, according to its gender and number; and the verb in the preſent of the infinitive with the preposition *à* before it, whatever caſe or preposition they govern in Engliſh; example;

He is fit *for* any thing. Are you ready *to* go out.
il eſt propre à *tout* *êtes-vous prêt* à *ſortir*

Moſt children are inclined *to* pleaſure. A diſturbed
la plupart des enfans *enclin* *plaiſir* m *troublé* 31
mind is not fit *to* diſcharge its duty. A chriſtian
eſprit m *propre* *remplir* *ſon devoir* *chrétien*
ought to be ready *to* die, rather than to deny his faith.
doit *prêt* *mourir* *plutôt que de renier* *foi* f
It is ridiculous to put oneſelf in a paſſion againſt ob-
il eſt ridicule *de mettre* *ſe* 48 *en* * *colère* *contre* *ob-*
jects which are inſenſible *of** our anger. I am ſenſible *of* your
jet 7 *inſenſible* *colère* *ſenſible*
kindneſſes. That is eaſy to ſay. Marſhy places are liable
bonté *cela* *facile* *dire* *marécageux* f *ſujet*
to heavy fogs.
épais 31 *brouillard*

RULE 34.—*Adjectives followed by* à *and* envers.

Some adjectives are followed in French by the preposition *à*, and in Engliſh by the preposition *in*; ſuch are *curieux à*, curious in; *exact à*, preciſe in; *habile à*, ſkilful in; *zèle à*, zea-zealous in, &c. Some others take the preposition *envers*; ſuch are, *affable*, *civile*, *cruel*, &c. example;

Young people ſhould be civil *to* every body.
les jeunes gens doivent être honnêtes envers *tout le monde*

* Senſible *and* inſenſible *govern the dative in French, and the genitive in Engliſh.*

Merchants ſhould be preciſe *in* their engagements, and
marchand doivent exact
chriſtians patient *in* ſuffering injuries. Your brother is
chrétiens ſouffrir injure
ſkilful *in* doing every thing. Scipio Africanus was reſpectful
habile faire tout Scipion l'Africain reſpectueux
to his mother, liberal *to* his ſiſters, good *to* his ſervants, juſt
mère libéral ſœurs bon domeſtique juſte
and affable *to* every body. I do not like people who
tout le monde aimer les perſonnes
are cruel to animals.

SECTION III.

Adjectives of Dimenſion.

RULE 35.—*Adjectives of Dimenſion.*

☞ The adjectives of dimenſion can be rendered in French by an adjective or a ſubſtantive. Thus *high* can be expreſſed by *de haut* or *de hauteur*; *long*, by *de long* or *de longueur*; *wide*, by *de large* or *de largeur*; but deep muſt be expreſſed by *de profondeur*, not by *de profond*; and in general the ſubſtantive is more elegantly uſed than the adjective; example;
a houſe eighty feet long and forty high.
une maiſon de 80 *pieds* de *longueur et* de 40 de *hauteur*
not *une maiſon quatrevingt pieds longue et quarante haute*

Obſerve to put *de* before the numbers, *un*, *deux*, *trois*, *quatre*, &c. when they are not preceded by a verb, and alſo before the words of dimenſion, *hauteur*, *profondeur*, &c.

The monument of London is a round pillar of the doric
m *Londres rond* 31 *pilier* 31
order *two* hundred feet *high*, it ſtands on a pedeſtal twenty
ordre cent pied eſt ſur piedeſtal vingt
feet high. The room of the tower in which is the royal
pied ſalle f *tour* f *où* 31
train of artillery, is an apartment *three* hundred and
train m *artillerie* 16 *apartement* m
eighty feet in length, fifty wide, and twenty high; it
quatre-vingt cinquante vingt
has a paſſage in the middle ſixteen feet wide, on each ſide of
m *au milieu ſeize pied de chaque côté*
which the artillery is placed.
duquel f *placée*

RULE 36.—*Adjectives of Dimenſion take* avoir.

☞ The Engliſh make uſe of the verb *to be* when they want to expreſs the height, depth or breadth of an object, and the French of the verb *avoir*. In this caſe *de* is left out before the word of number; example;

That houſe *is* fifty feet long.
cette maiſon a *cinquante* *pieds de longueur* not *eſt* 50, &c.

London-bridge *is* nine hundred feet *long*, forty-three
Londres 17 *pont* m *cens* *pied* *quarante*
high, and ſeventy-three wide. Weſtminſter-bridge *is*
ſoixante-treize *Weſtminſter* 17 *pont* m
forty-four feet broad; the free way under the arches of this
quarante *paſſage* *ſous* *arche* *ce*
bridge *is* eight hundred and ſeventy feet; it conſiſts of four-
pont *il eſt compoſé*
teen piers, thirteen large and two ſmall arches; the two
trumau *treize* *grand* *petit arche* f
middle piers *are* each ſeventeen feet wide, and contain two
du milieu 17 *dix-ſept* *contenir*
hundred tons of ſolid ſtones, all the others decreaſe in
tonneau ſolide 31 *pierre* f *autre diminuer*
breadth on each ſide by a foot. The coffee-trees *are* com-
de chaque côté d'un pied *caſier* m *or-*
monly forty feet high, they yield twice a year
dinairement quarante *donner deux fois l'an*
an abundant crop. The famous mine of Potoſi in Peru *is*
récolte f *fameux* 31 f *dans le Pérou*
more than fifteen hundred feet deep.
quinze *profondeur*

SECTION IV.

OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

The comparative of equality is made by putting *ſi*, *auſſi*, or *autant* before the adjective; that of ſuperiority, by putting *plus*; and that of inferiority, by putting *moins*.

RULE 37.—*as* expreſſed by *que*.

☞ The word *as* uſed in Engliſh after a comparative of equality or inferiority, is always expreſſed in French by *que*, and never by *comme*; example;

He is as learned *as* you. I am not ſo old
il eſt auſſi ſavant que *vous*. *Je ne ſuis pas ſi âgé*
as he.
que *lui*

N.B. When there are two *as*, the firſt is expreſſed by *auſſi*, as in the example above.

The love of our neighbour is as neceſſary in ſo-
amour 2 *prochain* m *auſſi néceſſaire dans ſo-*
ciety for the happineſs of life, *as* in chriſtianity for eternal
ciété f *bonheur* m f *chriſtianiſme* m *éternel* 31
ſociety. Great talents are of every condition, and if they
f *grand* m *toute* f *et ils*
do not ſhine ſo commonly in the low people *as* in others,
briller ſi communément bas peuple m *autres*
it is for want of care and cultivation. The man
* *faute de ſoin d'être cultivés*
truly great, preſerves his judgment in the midſt of
véritablement conſerver jugement m *au milieu*
dangers with as much preſence of mind, *as* if he was not
avec autant 18 *préſence eſprit*
in any danger. It is as eaſy to do good *as* to do
aucun m *auſſi aiſé de faire bien faire*
evil. Nothing delights ſo much *as* the works of nature.
mal rien ne plaire tant ouvrage f
The Thames is not ſo rapid *as* the Rhine. Paris is not ſo
tamiſe f *rapide rhin* m 14
populous *as* London.
peuplé Londres

RULE 38.—by *expreſſed by* de.

The word *by*, which is often uſed in Engliſh after a comparative, to denote how much a thing exceeds another, is expreſſed in French by *de*, and never by *par*; example;
your father is richer than mine *by* much.
votre père eſt plus riche que le mien de *beaucoup*

The condor is a bird of Peru bigger than the oſ-
m *oiſeau du Pérou plus grand au-*
trich *by* much. The goddeſs Calypſo was taller than
triche beaucoup déeſſe f *plus grand que*
all her nymphs *by* the whole head. I am older than you *by*
toute la tête plus âgé que
two years; however, you are more learned than me *by* ten
ans cependant ſavant moi
years, and taller *by* two inches. Your ſon is the moſt
plus grand pouce fils le plus

learned of my ſchool *by* much.
ſavant *école* *beaucoup*

RULE 39.—than *expreſſed by* que, *or by* de.

☞ The word *than*, which comes in Engliſh after a comparative, is expreſſed in French by *que* before a noun or a pronoun, and by *de* before the cardinal numbers *one*, *two*, *three*, &c. example;

He is taller *than* you. He is more *than* twenty years.
Il eſt plus grand que *vous* *il a plus* de *vingt ans*

Auguſtus was not perhaps a greater man *than* Antony,
Auguſte 14 *peutêtre* * *Antoine*
but he was more fortunate. Nothing is more pleaſing
heureux *rien n'eſt* *agréable*
to the mind than the light of truth. The ſimplicity
eſprit *lumière* f *vérité* f *ſimplicité* f
of nature is more *amiable* than all the embelliſhments of
4 f *aimable* *embelliſſement* m
art. Is there any thing more natural than to love thoſe
art *y a-t-il* *rien de* *naturel* *d'aimer ceux*
who do us good? The conſumption of wheat in
nous font bien 7 *conſomation* f *de bled* *à*
London is more *than* five millions ninety thouſand
Londres *plus* *cinq* *quatre-vingt-dix* *mille*
buſhels a year, that of oxen and cows more *than* one
boiſſeau par an *celle* *bœuf* *vache* *
hundred and twenty thouſand, and that of ſheep and lambs
cent * *vingt* *celle* *mouton* 21 *agneau*
more *than* nine hundred thouſand. Virtue is more precious
cent *mille* *vertu* f *précieux*
than riches. Lewis the fourteenth, in 1681, had ſixty thou-
richeſſes *Louïs* 11 *en* *ſoixante*
ſand ſailors, and more *than* a hundred men of war.
matelots * *vaiſſeaux*

RULE 40.—*than* expreſſed by *que de*, and *que ne*.

☞ The word *than*, which comes after a comparative, is expreſſed by *que de*, when the next verb is in the preſent of the infinitive; and uſually by *que ne*, when the next verb is in any tenſe of the indicative mood; example;

It is more noble to forgive *than* to revenge.
il eſt plus noble de pardonner que de *ſe venger*
Your ſon is more learned and wiſe *than* I thought.
votre fils eſt plus ſavant et plus ſage que *je* ne *penſois* *.

* Ne *is left out when there is a conjunction between* que *and the verb*; *example*; je me porte mieux *que* quand j'étois en France; *not* que quand je *n'*étois en France.

It is greater to overcome one's paſſions *than* to conquer
il plus grand de vaincre ſes *conquérir*
whole nations. There are ſome authors who write better
nations entières 7 *il y a* 7 *auteur* *écrire mieux*
than they ſpeak, and ſome others who ſpeak better *than*
parler *d'autres* *mieux*
they write. You make greater progreſs *than* I ſhould have
écrire *faire* 8 *progrès*
thought; and you behave better *than* when you were young.
penſer *vous vous conduire mieux* *jeune*
We flatter ourſelves more *than* we ſhould. It is
nous nous flatter *plus* *devoir*
harder to avoid cenſure *than* to gain applauſe;
plus difficile *éviter cenſure* f *gagner des applaudiſſement*
for this may be done by one great action; but, to avoid
peut *mais pour éviter*
that, a man muſt never do wrong. Religion teaches
ne devoir jamais *mal* f *nous ap-*
us to ſuffer injuries patiently, rather *than* to revenge.
prendre à ſouffrir *patiemment* *plutôt* *nous venger*

RULE 41.—*the more* expreſſed by *plus*.

☞ The Engliſh make uſe of the definite article before the comparatives of proportion, and the French never. Thus *the more* is expreſſed by *plus*, and *the leſs* by *moins*, not by *le plus*, or *le moins*, which are uſed only in ſuperlatives; example;

The more I ſtudy French, *the more* I like it.
plus *j'étudie le françois* plus *je l'aime*

not, *le plus j'étudie le françois, le plus je l'aime*

The more I know mankind, the leſs I value life.
connoître les hommes *eſtimer vie* f

The more a man is adorned with moderation, temperance,
orner 32 21

and juſtice, the more he is valuable. The more an hydropic
juſtice *eſtimable*

drinks, the more thirſty he is. The leſs you ſtudy, the
boire (ir) *il eſt altéré* *étudier*

leſs you will improve. The more I examine that queſtion,
profiter *examiner cette queſtion*

the more difficult I find it. The more we want
la trouver difficile *avons beſoin*

people to ſerve us, the leſs happy we are.
de gens pour nous ſervir *nous ſommes heureux*

RULE 42.—*the more* expreſſed by *plus*.

☞ If the comparatives of proportion are made with two

ſubſtantives, or two adjectives, the words of the ſentence are put in the following order. 1. Plus or moins. 2. The nominative of the verb. 3. The verb. 4. The ſubſtantive or adjective; the reſt as in Engliſh; example;

The richer people are; *the* more covetous they are.

1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4
plus on eſt riche *plus on eſt avare*

not, *le plus riche on eſt*; *le plus avare on eſt*;
as if it was, more one is rich, more one is covetous; and ſo on for all ſentences of the ſame kind.

The more elevated in dignity one is, the leſs pride one
élevé *dignité on* *d'orgeuil on*
ought to have. The more difficult a thing is, the more
doit * *difficile* *choſe* f
honourable. When a man poſſeſſes nothing great
elle eſt honnorable *ne poſséder rien* 18
but his birth, the higher that birth is, the more
que *naiſſance* f *plus grand cette*
inſignificant it muſt appear. The ſhorter the day is, the
inſignifiante elle doit paroître *plus court jour*
longer is the night. The leſs money he gets, the leſs
plus longue *nuit* f *d'argent gagner*
expences he incurs.
dépenſe *faire*

RULE 43.—*Superlative governs the Subjunctive and Genitive.*

☞ The ſuperlative always governs the noun in the genitive caſe in French, and the verb in the ſubjunctive mood; example;

China is the greateſt empire *in the* world.
la Chine eſt le plus grand empire du *monde*—genit.

You are the moſt happy man *I know*.
vous êtes l'homme le plus heureux que *je* connoiſſe—ſubj.

not, *empire dans le monde*; nor, *que je connois*

Probity is one of the greateſt qualities a man
probité f 9 *une* *qualité* f *qu'*
can be poſſeſſed of. Of all the amuſements and
pouvoir (ir) * *poſséder* * *tous* m
pleaſures of life, converſation has always been looked
plaiſirs 21 *vie* f f 9 *toujours* *conſidérée*
upon as the moſt reaſonable method of unbending
* *comme* *raiſonnable* 31 *méthode* f *délaſſer*
the mind. In the rich crown which his majeſty wears
eſprit 31 *couronne* f *majeſté* f *porter*
in parliament, is a large emerald ſeven inches round,
au parlément il y a grand éméraude f 35 *pouce de tour*

the fineſt pearl *in the* world. The beſt quality a man
perle f *monde* m *meilleur* f *qu'*
can have, is to be civil and obliging toward
pouvoir (ir) *d'être* *obligeant envers*
the moſt uncivil and diſobliging people. The city
les plus incivile 31 *déſobligeant perſonnes* f *ville* f
of Troy was formerly the moſt famous *in* Aſia Minor.
autrefois *fameux* *Aſie* f *mineure*
The reign of Lewis the Fourteenth was one of the longeſt,
regne *Louïs* 11 *fut*
and altogether one of the moſt glorious which *is* recorded
tout à la fois *glorieux* *rapporté*
in hiſtory.
hiſtoire

RULE 44.—*Superlative takes an Article.*

If the ſubſtantive precedes the ſuperlative, both take the definite article *le, la, les,* before them; but the ſubſtantive takes no article, if the ſuperlative goes firſt; example;

The greateſt man in the French army.
le *plus grand homme* *de l'armée françoiſe*
You are the man the moſt obliging in the town.
vous êtes l'homme le *plus* *obligeant de la ville*

N.B. The ſuperlatives precede the ſubſtantive, when they are formed from the adjectives, mentioned in the rule 30; and uſually go after, when they are formed from any other.

The moſt learned men are not often the moſt vir-
plus ſavant 31 *ſouvent* *ver-*
tuous. Sobriety renders the moſt common way of
tueux *ſobriété* f *rendre* *commun* 31 *genre* m
living agreeable; it gives the moſt vigorous health,
vie f *agréable* *elle donner* *vigoureux* 31 *ſanté* f
which is the moſt conſtant of all plaſures. Pride ſhuts
conſtant *plaiſir* m *orgueil fermer*
the heart againſt the plaineſt conviction. The emperor
cœur m *à* *évident* 31 f *empereur*
Antoninus is conſidered as one of the greateſt princes
Antonin *conſidérer* *un* 30
who ever reigned. The canal of Languedoc is one
aient jamais régné m *du* *un*
of the moſt memorable monuments which have been made
31 *monument* m *qui* 43 *faits*
in the age of Lewis the fourteenth. The moſt ancient
dans ſiécle m *Louïs* 11 31
and general idolatry, was the worſhip rendered to the ſun.
idolatrie f *culte* m *ſoleil*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon ADJECTIVES, COMPARATIVES, and SUPERLATIVES.

The first wing of the noble and superb edifice of
30 *aile* f 31 *superbe bâtiment* m
Greenwich, was erected by Charles the second. The epic
érigée 11 *épique* 31
poem, whether it appears in the majestic simplicity of
poëme m *soit qu'il paroisse* *majestueux* 31 f
Homer, or in the finished elegance of Virgil, presents an
Homère *finie* 31 *Virgile* *présenter*
endless variety of grand and beautiful objects, which
sans fin 31 *variété* f 29 *beau* *objet* *qu'*
it is impossible to contemplate without a perpetual succession
de contempler *sans* *perpetuel* 31 f
of agreeable emotions. It may be said that a magistrate
d' 31 *émotions* *on peut* * *dire* *magistrat* m
is a speaking law, and the law a dumb magistrate.
parlante 31 *loi* f *muet* 31

The great wall on the north of China *is* about fifteen
mur *au* *nort* 36 *quinze*
hundred miles long, and the royal canal of that empire *is*
35
about eighteen hundred miles long. The walls of Babylon
dix-huit 35 *Babylone*
were two hundred feet *high*, and fifty broad.
36 *pied* 36

The fewer desires, the more peace. The more we
* *moins* 18 *désir* * 18 *paix* 41 *nous*
abstain from sensual pleasures, the easier we can be
s'abstenir *sensuel* 31 *plaisir* m *plus aisément* *pouvoir*
without them; and the more we indulge them, the more
nous en passer 41 *les satisfaire* 41
desirous we are to gratify them. An angry man, who
nous désirer * *les satisfaire* *en colère* 31
suppresses his passion, thinks worse than he speaks; an
supprimer *passion* f *penser* *plus mal* 40 *parler*
angry man that will chide, speaks worse than he
vouloir (ir) *gronder* *plus mal* 40
thinks. One of the greatest defects of the Pharsalia, is
penser *un* *plus grand défaut* *Pharsale* f
that fury of imagination which Lucan did not know
cette fougue f *d'* *que* 14 *savoir (ir)*
how to repress, and which made him rather an enthusiast
* * *réprimer* *le faire* *plutôt* m
than a poet.
poëte

I have no pity on the misery of those who, being
pas pitié de misère f *ceux*
young and strong, chuse rather to beg than to work;
jeunes fort aiment mieux * *mandier* 40 *travailler*
but I pity the old who cannot get
mais j'ai pitié des viellards pouvoir (ir) gagner
their livelihood. Westminster Abbey, within its walls,
vie 17 *Abbaïe* f *en dedans mur*
is three hundred and sixty feet long; at the nave it is
36 *cent* * *soixante pied* 35 *à nef* f 36
seventy feet broad, and at the cross one hundred and
soixante dix 35 *croix* f * *
ninety. The front of Somerset-place towards the
quatrevingt dix 17 *place* f *vers*
Strand *is* about one hundred feet long, and the front
m 36 *environ* * 35
towards the principal court is two hundred feet and more.
vers 31 *cour* f 36

The most learned men make sometimes the grossest
plus savant 31 *faire quelque fois grossier* 44
mistakes. Obedience is the surest means whereby we
faute f *obéïssance* 44 *moyen* m * *
may please our superiors.
de plaire à supérieur

CHAPTER IV.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.—*See p.* 17.

THIS chapter is divided into three sections. The first shews when the personal pronouns are conjunctive or disjunctive. The second treats of the pronouns used with reference to animals and things. The third explains the right placing of personal pronouns, &c.

SECTION I.

When the Personal Pronouns are Conjunctive or Disjunctive.

RULE 45.—*Personal Pronouns in the Nominative.*

1. The personal pronouns, *I, thou, he, she, we, you, they*; are usually *conjunctive*, and expressed in French by *je, tu, il,*

elle, nous, vous, ils, elles, when they are the ſubject or the nominative caſe of a verb; example;

I play, *thou* ſingeſt, *he* dances, *we* ſpeak.
je joue *tu* chantes *il* dance *nous* parlons

2. They are *disjunctive,* and expreſſed by *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles*; firſt, when they come after a conjunction; as, *lui* et *moi* nous y irons, not *il* et *je,* he and I ſhall go there. Secondly, when they are uſed in an anſwer to a queſtion; as, *qui a fait cela?—moi,* not *je,* who has done that?—*I.* Thirdly, when they come after a comparative; as, il eſt plus ſavant qu'*eux,* not qu'*ils,* he is more learned than *they.* Fourthly, when they come before the word *qui* or *ſeul*; as, c'eſt *moi* qui le dis, not c'eſt *je,* it is I who ſay ſo; *lui* ſeul peut le faire, not *il* ſeul, he alone can do it.

1. The eagle has a very piercing eye; *he* looks at
aigle m *perçant* 31 *vue* f *regarder* *
the ſun without caſting down his eye-lids; he inhabits
ſoleil m *ſans baiſſer* * *les paupière* *habiter*
the cold countries, he builds his neſt on the ſummit of
froid 31 *pays* *bâtir* *nid* m *ſommet* m
the higheſt trees.—2. I am not ſo learned as your brother,
arbres m *ſe ſavant que* *frère*
but he is older than *I.*—1. You ſpeak too faſt.—2. *He* and
plus âgé *trop vile*
your brother were of the ſame opinion.

2. *They* and my brother are come.—2. *They* alone have
frère *venir* *ſeul*
fought the enemy; and conſequeutly *they* alone deſerve
combattre *ennemi* *conſequemment* *mériter*
to be rewarded for that brilliant action which enſured our
d' *récompensés* *cette* 31 f *qui aſſurer*
victory.—2. Telemachus, ſpeaking of his father Ulyſſes to the
victoire f *Télémaque* *père*
goddeſs Calypſo, ſaid to her, Penelope his wife, and I
déeſſe f *lui dire* *femme*
who am his ſon, have loſt all hopes of ſeeing him again.
fils nous perdu *eſpérance* *le revoir*
Sir, one has written a book againſt you. Who?—
monſieur *écrire (ir)* *livre* m *qui*
Scopas; *he?* I forgive him; what he writes is read
lui pardonner *cequ'il* *écrire n'eſt lu*
by nobody; he hurts nobody but himſelf.—2. You like
de perſonne *ne nuire à* *qu'à lui-même*
the town, and *I* the country.
ville f *campagne* f

RULE 46.—*Perſonal Pronouns in the Genitive.*

The perſonal pronouns *of me, of him, of her, of us, of you, of them,* are moſt frequently disjunctive in the genitive caſe, and expreſſed by *de moi, de lui, d'elle, de nous, de vous, d'eux,* or *d'elles*; example;

They often ſpeak *of me*, but I never ſpeak *of them.*
ils parlent ſouvent de moi, *mais je ne parle jamais* d'eux *.

When one adviſed Philip to expel from his dominions,
quand on conſeilla à de chaſſer domaine
a man who had ſpoken ill *of him*; I will take care not to
mal j'aurai ſoin de ne pas
do it, replied Philip; he would go every where, and
le faire répliqua aller (ir) partout
ſpeak ill of *me*. In the education of youth, we ought to
parler dans jeuneſſe devoir *
inſtruct them in the religious worſhip which God re-
les inſtruire religieux 31 *culte* m *Dieu de-*
quires of *them*. I ſpeak well of you, Damon; you ſpeak
mander bien
ill of me. What a misforune is ours, neither of us
mal quel * *malheur* m *le nôtre on ne nous croit*
is believed. If you do not behave better, I will
ni l'un ni l'autre ne vous conduire mieux
complain of *you* to your father.
me plaindre père

RULE 47.—*Perſonal Pronouns in the Dative.*

☞ 1. The perſonal pronouns (*to* me, to thee, to him, to her, to us, to you, to them) are conjunctive, and expreſſed in French by *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur,* before the verb or its auxiliary; example;

She ſpeaks *to him.* She has ſpoken *to them.*
elle lui *parle elle* leur *a parlé*
as if it was, ſhe to him ſpeaks; ſhe to them has ſpoken.

2. They are disjunctive, and expreſſed by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux* or *à elles,* when they come after a noun or a pronoun to which they are joined by a conjunction; as, je parle *à vous* et *à lui,* I ſpeak to you and to him;—when they are governed by a reflected verb; as, il s'adreſſa *à moi,* je me fiois *à lui,* he applied to me, I truſted to him;—when they are governed by any of the following verbs; *aller,* to go; *courir,* to run; *boire,* to drink; *penſer,* to think; and *venir,* to come; example;

* *They are ſometimes expreſſed by* en, *in anſwer to a queſtion; as, parliez vous de moi?—oui,* j'en *parlois.*

I think *of you.* Go *to him.* He comes *to me.*
je penſe *à vous* allez *à lui* il vient *à moi*

N.B. The pronoun *him* or *her* are expreſſed by *lui*, and *them* by *leur*, when the prepoſition *to* could be prefixed to them. They are uſually expreſſed by *le la* or *les* when it could not.

1. The forgiveneſs of our enemies does not conſiſt only
pardon m *ennemi* * *conſiſter*
in not hurting *them* in their reputation, or fortune, we
à ne pas nuire *dans* *leur fortune*
muſt beſides love them and do *them* good.—1. A good
devoir en outre les aimer *faire* *du bien*
man is as grateful to you, for the advantages you
vous eſt auſſi réconnoiſſant *bien* *que*
wiſh *him*, as for the preſents you make *him*.—2. I for-
ſouhater 37 *que faire* *par-*
give both you and him, becauſe I hope you
donner * *à* *parceque eſpérer vous vous*
will behave better for the future.—2. When your bro-
conduire mieux à l'avenir
ther came to us, we did not think of him. You have
venir *penſer à* *m'avez*
deceived me, I will not truſt you any more.—2. The mi-
tromper *me fier à* * *plus* *mi-*
niſter is your enemy; if you apply to him, you never will
niſtre *ſi vous s' addreſſer*
ſucceed.—1. A young man who follows the good advice
réuſſir *jeune* *ſuivre (ir)* *conſeil*
which is given him, will be a man of merit.
*qu'on * donne lui* *mérite*

RULE 48.—*Perſonal Pronouns in the Accuſative.*

☞ When the perſonal pronouns *(me, thee, him, her, us, you, them)* are in the accuſative, they are uſually conjunctive, and expreſſed by *me, te, ſe, le, la, nous, vous, les*, before the verb which governs them, or before its auxiliary; example;

I ſee *them.* I know *you.* He loves *us.*
je *les* vois je *vous* connois il *nous* aime
I have ſeen *them.* I have known *you.* He has loved *us.*
je *les* ai vus je *vous* ai connu. il *nous* a aimé
as if it was, *I them ſee, I you know, he us love*, &c.

Obſerve, that *le, la, les*, are pronouns before a verb, and articles before a noun.

God is a father to thoſe who love him, and a protector
Dieu le de ceux aimer le protecteur

to thoſe who fear *him*. Vice often deceives *us* under the
craindre *vice* m *tromper* *ſous*
ſhape of virtue. If you will get a friend, prove him
maſque m f *vouloir (ir)* *ami* *éprouver* 56
firſt, and be not haſty to credit him. A great
auparavant *pas prompt* *à vous fier à lui*
ſource of error, is the common practice of judging
cauſe f *d'erreur* *commun* 31 *pratique* f *de juger*
what men will appear in a point of view in which we
ceque *paroître* m *vue* *où*
have not ſeen *them*, from what they appear in another,
voir (ir) *par ceque* *un autre*
in which we have ſeen *them*.
voir (ir)

RULE 49.—*Pronoun after a Prepoſition.*

When the perſonal pronouns are governed by a prepoſition, they are always disjunctive, and expreſſed by *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, *elle*; *nous*, *vous*, *eux* or *elles*; example;

Do that for *me*. Do not ſpeak againſt *them*.
faites cela pour moi *ne parlez pas contre* eux
not *faites cela pour me*, *ne parlez pas contre les*

May theſe children be to you, what they have been to
puiſſent *enfans* *envers* *ceque*
me! Oh God! repay them thirty years of happineſs, which
rendez leur trente ans *bonheur*
I owe to their tenderneſs and virtue. Pyſiſtratus ſaid
devoir *tendreſſe* 21 *vertu* *dire (ir)*
of a drunken perſon, who had ſpoken againſt *him*, I am
ivre 31 *perſonne* *contre*
no more angry with *him*, than if a blind man had run
fâché contre *aveugle* *s'étoit jetté*
againſt *me*. The love of enemies conſiſts in deſiring their
amour *ennemi* *conſiſter* *à déſirer*
welfare, in praying for *them*, and in ſpeaking well of *them*,
bien *à prier* *à parler* *bien*
when occaſion requires it.
quand l'occaſion 9 *demander* *le* 48

PRONOUNS uſed with reference to ANIMALS and THINGS.

SECTION II.

Of the Imperſonal Pronouns it, they, *or* them.

RULE 50.—*The Pronouns* it, they, them.

When the pronouns *it* or *they*, which the Engliſh uſe with reference to animals and inanimate objects, are in the nominative caſe, they are expreſſed, *it* by *il* or *elle*; and *they* by *ils* or *elles*. When *it* or *them* are in the accuſative, they are expreſſed, *it* by *le* or *la*, and *them* by *les* before the verb, as the perſonal pronouns of which before. Thus ſpeaking of a houſe, we ſay,

It is new; I will not ſell *it*; but I will let *it*.
elle eſt neuve *je ne* la *vendrai pas* *mais je* la *louerai*

Obſerve to make theſe pronouns agree in gender and number with the noun to which they have reference.

Ambition is a noble paſſion, but *it* often occaſions many
ambition f 31 f *mais ſouvent* *bien des*
miſchiefs. Neglect the pleaſures of life, the pains which
mal *négligez* *plaiſir* m *vie* f *peine* f
follow *them* prove how much *they* are vain. The
ſuivre (ir) *prouver* *combien* *vain*
pleaſures of a temperate man are durable, becauſe *they* are
m *tempéré* 31 *parcequ'*
regular; and his life is calm, becauſe *it* is innocent.
régulier *vie* f *calme* *innocent*
The public approbation is the object which makes us un-
31 f *objet* *faire* 48 *en-*
dertake heroical actions, and it is by ſuch actions
treprendre *héroïque* 31 7 *c'eſt* *de telles*
that we deſerve *it*. This is a fine apple-tree, *it* bloſſoms
mériter *voilà* *pommier* m *fleurir*
every ſpring; yet *it* ſeldom produces any fruit. I will
tous les printems *rarement* *produit* *aucun*
cut *it* down if *it* yields no apples this year.
abbattre *avoir* *pomme* *cette année*

RULE 51.—en, *for* it *or* them *.

1. The pronouns *it* or *them*, are expreſſed by *(en)* before a verb which governs the genitive caſe; example;

Do not ſpeak *of it*. I remember *it* very well.
*n'*en *parlez* pas *je m'*en *reſſouviens très-bien.*

2. When the words *ſome* or *any* come after a verb, and have reference to a noun antecedent, they are alſo expreſſed in French by *en* before the verb; example;

If he has any pears, he will give you *ſome*.
s'il a des poires il vous en *donnera*

2. You have bought fine lace, give me *ſome*; buy *ſome*,
acheter 8 *dentelle* f *me* 56
if you will have *any*.
vouloir *

3. What avail riches to a miſer? he does not make
que ſervent richeſſe avare faire
any uſe *of them*.—2. I have many oranges, will
aucun plusieurs vouloir (ir)
you have any? I will be obliged to you, if you will
obliger 47 *vouloir*
give me ſome.—1. Life is a gift of God; to diſpoſe *of it*,
donner vie f *don Dieu diſpoſer*
is a crime.—1. Honour is an inacceſſible iſland; as ſoon
crime m *honneur* 31 *iſle* f *auſſitôt*
as you have gone out *of it*, you cannot come into it again.
que être ſortir * *pouvoir rentrer y* *

RULE 52.—*lui*, *leur*, *y*, it, them.

1. When the pronouns *it* or *them* are in the dative caſe, and have reference to animals, they are expreſſed by *lui* or *leur*, as the perſonal pronouns; example;

Votre chien a ſoif; *donnez*-lui *à manger*.
your dog is dry; give it ſomething to eat.

2. They are both expreſſed by *y*, when they refer to inanimate objects; example;

Ce tableau eſt tres bon; *mettez* y *une bordure*.
this picture is very good; put a frame *to it*.

---

* *When* it *or* them *have reference to plants, or are preceded by the verbs* to owe *or* to be indebted, *they are always expreſſed by* lui *or* leur, *even with reference to an inanimate object.*

1. Your horſes are hungry, give *them* ſome hay.
cheval avoir faim donner 7 foin m
2. Before you tell a ſtory, it is proper to give the
avant de conter hiſtoire f *à propos donner à*
company a true idea of the perſons who are con-
compagnie f *vrai idée* f *perſonnes* inté-
cerned *in it.* When truth appears in all its brightneſs,
reſsées vérité f *paroître éclat*
nobody can reſiſt *it.* My houſe is in a good air;
perſonne 116 *pouvoir réſiſter maiſon* f *air*
I am indebted to it for the recovery of my health;
rédevable lui rétabliſſement m *ſanté* f
2. I muſt have ſome repairs made *to it.*—2. Pearls
il faut que je faſſe faire des réparations perle f
would not be worth ſo much money, if luxury did
valoir (ir) tant 18 *argent luxe* m
not give value *to them.*—2. How many people would not
donner prix m
be known in ſociety, if gaming did not introduce them *into it.*
connu f *jeu* m

RULE 53.—*Pronouns* it *or* them *left out.*

When the impersonal pronouns *it* or *them* come after a preposition, and have reference to inanimate objects, they are usually left out, and the preposition becomes an adverb; example;

Approchez-vous du feu, je ſuis tout auprès.
come near the fire, I am quite near it
not *je ſuis tout auprès* de lui

The falling down of the water of the Nile makes
chute f * *eau nile faire*
ſo much noiſe that it renders deaf thoſe who dwell
tant 18 *bruit elle rendre ſourd ceux demeurer*
near *it.* Labour is fruitleſs, when nature is againſt *it.*
auprès travail 9 *inutile* f *contre*
Do you know where is the treaſury of London?—
ſavez-vous où tréſorie f *Londres*
Yes, Sir, I do; well then, you will eaſily find
oui je le ſais eh bien trouver aiſément
your way; near *it* is York-houſe, juſt by is the
chemin auprès f *tout auprès*
horſe-guards, and over againſt *it,* is the royal chapel,
garde à cheval vis à vis 31 *chapelle* f
where you want to go.
où vouloir (ir) aller

RULE 54.—*Supplying Pronouns*, le, la, les.

One of theſe three ſupplying pronouns *(le, la, les,)* is uſually put in French before the verb *être* uſed in anſwer to a queſtion; they are alſo uſed every time the word *it* or *ſo* are or could be expreſſed in Engliſh.

1. *Le* indeclinable is always uſed with reference to verbs and adjectives of both genders and numbers; example:
We have been ſick, and are ſo ſtill.
Nous avons été malades, et nous (le) ſommes encore.
Are you ſatisfied, madam? no, I am not.
êtes vous contente, madame? non, je ne (le) ſuis pas.

2. When the ſupplying pronouns have reference to a ſubſtantive, they agree with it in gender and number; thus we uſe *le* with reference to a noun m. *la* to a noun f. and *les* to a noun pl. Example:
Are you Peter's ſon? yes, Sir, I am.
êtes-vous le fils de Pierre? Oui, monſieur, je (le) ſuis m.
Are you the daughter of Mr. A?—yes, I am.
êtes-vous la fille de Monſieur A?—Oui je (la) ſuis f.
Are theſe your houſes? yes, they are.
*ſont-ce là vos chevaux? oui ce (les) ſont.** pl.

1. I thought that Miſs B. was married, but ſhe is not.—
croire mademoiſelle marriée
1. My aunts are ſick, and I think will be *ſo* for a long time.
*tante malade penſer * tems.*
2. Are you the ſiſters of Mr. Tayler? yes, we *are*.—1. Are
ſœur
you learned? No, we are not.—1. Do you ſpeak French?
ſavant? non. parler
yes, we do.—Are you the brothers of Admiral Nelſon? Yes, we are.—2. Are you the ſiſters of Colonel Jenkinſon? No, Sir, we are not.—1. Are your brothers learned? yes, they *are*.
vos frères ſont-ils ſavant
—1. Are your ſiſters married? no, they *are* not.—Is your
vos ſœurs ſont elles marriées? non. votre
mother ſick?—no, ſhe is not.—Is your father rich? no, he is
mère malade votre père eſt il riche
not. Is that your houſe? yes, it is.—2. Are theſe your
eſt-ce-là ſont-ce la

* Ce *is uſed in the anſwer, before* le, la, les, *when the queſtion is aſked*, by *eſt*-ce-là or *ſont*-ce-là; *example*; eſt-ce là votre livre? oui *ce* l'eſt: *we alſo anſwer by* oui *or* non, *without repeating the verb the queſtion is aſked by.*

gardens? no they are not. Is that your hat? yes, it is.—
jardin *eſt-ce là* *chapeau*
Are theſe your pens? yes, they *are*.—1. Your ſiſters are
ſont ce là *plume*, f. *ſœurs*
happy, and we are not *ſo*. 1. They have been rich, but they
heureux *riche* *elles*
are not *ſo* at preſent.

SECTION III.

The right placing of perſonal and impersonal Pronouns.

RULE 55.—*Place of the Pr.* je, tu, il, &c.

The perſonal pronouns, *je, tu, il, elle*, &c. are placed after the verb, when the ſentence is interrogative, and before when it is not. Example: *je parle*, I ſpeak, *parlez-vous?* do you ſpeak? *il pleut*, it rains; *pleut-il?* does it rain?

We often paſs judgment upon men's actions, according to
juger ſouvent des 17 *ſelon*
the love or hatred we have for the perſons who have done
haine, f *que* *perſonne* *faites*
them. Do you learn French? have you learnt it long? do
les 48 *aprendre (ir)* *l'avez* *long tems*
you ſpeak it fluently? Things do not always ſtrike us in pro-
le *coulamment choſe*, f *frapper* 48 *à*
portion as they are obvious; on the contrary, ſome do not
qu'elles *claire* *an* *contraire* *quelques unes*
ſtrike us at all, becauſe they are obvious in the higheſt degree.
48 *du-tout* *parce-qu'elles* *claires* *au* *degré* m
Is he young? are they rich? is ſhe handſome?
jeune *riche*

RULE 56.—*Pronouns after the Verb.*

1. The perſonal pronouns are put in French as in Engliſh, immediately after the verb they are governed by, when it is in the ſecond perſon ſingular, the firſt or ſecond plural of the imperative affirmative. Example.
give *it me*; ſell *it him*; ſend *them ſome*.
donnez-*le moi*; vendez-*le lui*; envoyez-*leur en*.

2. If however, there were two imperatives affirmative joined by a conjunction, the governed pronouns ſhould go in French after the firſt verb, and before the ſecond; Example.
Sell or give it me, take it and eat it.
vendez le moi, *ou* me le *donnez*, *prenez* la *et* la *mangez*.

3. If the verb was in the imperative negative, the governed pronouns ſhould go before it, as they go in all other tenſes; example;

Do not ſell it him; do not give it them.
ne le lui *vendez-pas* *ne* le leur *donnez pas*

1. Anſwer me; write to him; forgive them; ſpeak to
répondre moi *écrire* *lui* *pardonner leur* *parler*
us.—2. Love your enemies, and do them good, when
aimer *ennemi* *faire leur* 7
you can. 2. Obey your parents, love and reſpect
le pouvair (ir) *obéir à* *réſpecter*
them as long as you live.—1. Conſider, O parents, the im-
les *tant que* *vivrez* *conſidérer* *im-*
portance of your obligations towards your children; it de-
portance *envers* *enfans* *dé-*
pends on you, whether they will be, or not, uſeful mem-
pendre de *ſi* *non* *utile* 31 7
bers of ſociety; teach them obedience, and they ſhall
ſociété f *enſeigner* *leur* *obéiſſance* 9
bleſs you; teach them modeſty, and they ſhall not be
benir 48 *apprendre leur* 9 f
aſhamed; teach them charity, and they ſhall be loved;
honteux *enſeigner* *leur* *charité* f *être aimer*
teach them temperance, and they ſhall enjoy a good health.
leur 9 f *jouir d'une* *ſanté* f
2. Forgive him, or puniſh him directly.
pardonner *lui* *punir* *le ſur le champ*

RULE 57.—*Pronouns before the Verb.*

☞ The perſonal pronouns are always put in French before the verb they are governed by, or before its auxiliary, when it is not in the imperative affirmative; example;

I know *him*. I have ſeen *them*. I have ſpoken to *her*.
je le *connois* *je* les *ai vu* *je* lui *ai parlé*

The ſecond Brutus would have re-eſtabliſhed the Romans
avoir *rétablir* *Romain*
in their ancient liberty, if he had found *them* as well diſ-
f *trouver les auſſi* *diſ-*
poſed as they were in the time of the firſt.
poſés *qu'ils* *tems*

Jupiter, irritated that Saturn laid ſnares for *him*, armed
irrité 14 *tendre* 7 * *lui*
againſt him, drove *him* out of his kingdom, and con-
contre 49 *chaſſer* *le* *royaume* m *ob-*

ſtrained *him* to quit heaven. Proſperity gets *us* friends,
ligea le quitter ciel 9 faire ami 7
and adverſity tries *them*. Do you know the prince
9 *éprouver les connoître*
of Wales? I have ſeen *him* ſeveral times, but I
Galles voir (ir) pluſieurs fois mais
have never ſpoken to *him*. We flatter ourſelves in vain
lui flatter en vain
that we quit our paſſions, when it is they which quit
quitter ce ſont elles quitter
us. I believe *him*. Do you believe *them?* He will not
croire le les
puniſh *me*. Do you not know *her?*
punir connoître la

RULE 58.—*Pronouns before the Verb,*

☞ When a verb which is not in the imperative affirmative governs two or more pronouns, they are always placed immediately before it, or before its auxiliary, in the following order:

Me, te, ſe, nous, vous, *go before* le, la, les.
le, la, les, - - - - *go before* lui *or* leur.
lui, leur, - - - - - *go before* y *or* en.
y, - - - - - - - *goes before* en.

N.B. When two pronouns are governed by a verb, that which has reference to perſons is put in the dative in French, if the prepoſition *to* could be prefixed to it in Engliſh; example;
He gives *it me*; he gives *it him*; he gives *it to them*.
il *me le* donne il *le lui* donne il *le leur* donne
He has ſold *it to him*; he has given *me ſome* this morning.
il *le lui* a vendu il *m'en* a donné ce matin
as if it was *he to me it gives*; *he it to him has ſold*

I dare not tell *it them*, pray, brother, tell it to my
n'ose dire le leur je vous prie le 56
mother; ſhe knows it, I told it her yeſterday. If you
ſait le 57 *le lui hier*
have ſtill your orange, give it me; I am ſorry I cannot
encore f la moi 56 *fâché nepuis pas*
give it you, your ſiſter has been a good girl, and I have
la vous ſœur fille
given *it her*; I will give you ſome to-morrow, if your
la lui vous en demain
exerciſe is well done.
thême

Do not ſay to a friend who aſks ſomething from
dites *demander* *
you, go and come again, to-morrow I will give *it you,*
vous allez revenir * *demain donner le*
when you can give *it him* preſently. The duke of Bouillon
pouvez le lui ſur le champ duc
was obliged to give the town of Sedan to Henry the
obliger de donner ville
Fourth; but this prince, ſatisfied with his ſubmiſſion, gave
11 *content de ſoumiſſion rendit*
it him back ſoon. He gives *it to me,* he has lent *it you,*
* *bientôt le me prêter le vous*
he has ſent *them us.* He gives *it them,* he will lend
envoyer les nous donner le leur prêter
it to them, he has ſent *them to him.* You have told
le leur envoyer les lui dit
it me enough; I pray you, never to ſpeak to me any more
le me aſſez prier de ne m'en plus parler
about it. Epaminondas refuſed the preſents of Darius, and
refuſer
told thoſe who offered them to him from that king,
dire à ceux offrir les lui de la part de roi
if he deſires nothing of me, but what is juſt, there
demander * *me que cequi il*
is no occaſion for preſents; and if he has other de-
ne faut pas de ſi d'autres deſ-
ſigns, let him know that he is not rich enough to
ſeins qu'il ſache aſſez riche pour
bribe me.
corrompre me 57

When Perſonal Pronouns are or not to be repeated.

RULE 59.—*Pronouns* je, tu, il, *&c. repeaeed.*

1. The pronouns of the firſt and ſecond perſons, ſuch as *je, tu, nous, vous,* are uſually repeated in French before every verb of which they are the nominative caſe; example;

I ſay and will always ſay that ſhe was in the wrong.
je *dis et* je *dirai toujours qu'elle avoit tort*

2. The pronouns of the third perſon, ſuch as *il* or *elle, ils* or *elles,* need not to be repeated, unleſs the verb be in different tenſes, or one be affirmative and the other negative; example;

Cæſar conquered provinces, and ſubdued whole nations.
Cæſar conquit des provinces et ſoumit des nations entières

They have ſeen him, but they have not ſpoken to him.
ils *l'ont vu* *mais* ils *ne lui ont pas parlé*

I maintain, and will always maintain, that we cannot be
ſoutenir *ne pouvoir*
happy without practiſing virtue. Man riſes and unfolds
ſans pratiquer vertu f *s'elever déployer*
his faculties by degrees; he advances ſlowly to matu-
faculté *degré* *avancer* *lentement* *matu-*
rity, and after declines gradually till he ſinks into
rité f *enſuite* *graduellement* *deſcende*
the grave. Beware of drunkenneſs, it impairs the un-
tombeau m *évitez* * *ivrognerie* f *elle abrutir* *en-*
derſtanding, tarniſhes reputation, and conſumes the body.
tendement *ternir* f *conſumer* *corps* m
He ſays ſo, but he does not believe it. We have ſpoken,
dire *le* *croire (ir)* *parlé*
and will ſpeak again in your favour.

RULE 60.—*Pronouns* me, te, ſe, *&c. repeated.*

☞ The perſonal pronouns muſt be repeated in French, before every verb they are governed by, though they are not repeated in Engliſh; example;

I honour and reſpect *him*. I ſay and repeat *it*.
je l'*honnore* *et je* le *reſpecte* *je* le *dis* *et je* le *repete*
as if it was, *I him honour* and *him reſpect*

The handſomeſt flowers laſt but a ſhort time, the
plus belle *fleur* *ne durer que* *peu* 18 *tems*
leaſt rain tarniſhes them, the wind withers them, the
moindre pluie f *ternir* *les* *vent flétrir* *les*
ſun ſcorches them, not to mention an infinite num-
ſoleil brûler *les* *pour ne pas parler d'un infini* 31 *nom-*
ber of inſects that ſpoil and hurt them. A
bre 18 *inſecte* *gâter les* *faire du mal leur*
paſſionate temper renders a man unfit for buſineſs, de-
31 *caractère* *rendre* *affaire* *pri-*
prives him of his reaſon, robs him of all that is great
ver *le* *raiſon* f *ôter lui* * *tout* *ce qui* *grand*
in his nature, and makes him unfit for ſociety. The holy
f *rendre le* *ſociété* f
ſcripture teaches us what we ought to be; let us
écriture f *apprendre (ir)* *ceque* *devoir* *
therefore read them, meditate upon them, and make
c'eſt pourquoi *lire* *les* *méditer* * *les* 56 *faire*
them the rule of our conduct. A well-educated ſon never
ſes 56 *regle* f *conduite* *élevé* *jamais*

rebels againſt his father, he loves, honours, and reſpects
ſe révolter contre *aimer honnorer reſpecter*
him.
le

RULE 61.—*Pronouns*, himſelf, herſelf, *&c.*

1. The pronouns *himſelf*, *herſelf*, *themſelves*, are expreſſed in French, by *ſe* with a reflected verb, and moſt frequently by *lui-même*, or *elle-même*, &c. in other caſes; example;

He is too proud, he does not know *himſelf*.
il eſt trop fier il ne ſe connoit pas
He blames in others the faults he commits *himſelf*.
il blâme dans les autres les fautes qu'il fait lui-même

2. *Soi* is uſed for *one's ſelf*, or *himſelf*, in ſpeaking of perſons in general, that is to ſay, in a vague ſenſe, and without any ſpecification; example;

One ought not to ſpeak of *one's ſelf* but with modeſty.
en ne doit parler de ſoi *qu'avec modeſtie*.

2. Every body acts for *himſelf*.—2. When a man does
chacun agir quand
not mind any body but *himſelf*, he does not deſerve to live.
penſer qu'a mériter de vivre

1. It is not the part of a courageous man to expoſe
*il n'eſt pas * courageux* 31 *de expoſer*
himſelf to danger without neceſſity.—1. They are eaſily
danger m *ſans néceſſité* 78 *aiſément*
pardoned who endeavour to recall *themſelves* from their
pardonner chercher à rétirer
errors.—2. When a man loves nobody but *himſelf*, he is
*erreur quand n'aimer * que*
not fit for ſociety.—2. To excuſe in *one's ſelf* the faults
propre f * *excuſer en faute*
which one cannot bear in others, is to like
*pouvoir (ir) ſouffrir autres c'eſt * aimer*
better to be fooliſh *one's ſelf* than to ſee others ſo.—1. Your
mieux ſou ſoi-même 40 *voir*
brother thinks of *himſelf*; he often makes reflections upon
penſer à faire ſouvent ſur
himſelf, and I hope he will ſoon correct *himſelf* of his
eſpérer bientôt corriger
bad habits.
mauvais habitude f

RULE 62.—*itſelf* expreſſed by *lui* or *ſoi*.

The pronoun *itſelf* is expreſſed by *lui-même* or *elle-même*, with reference to an animate object or even inanimate of the

feminine gender; but it is uſually expreſſed by *ſoi* with reference to a pronoun, or to an inanimate object of the maſculine gender; example;

That is good in *itſelf*. Vice is odious of *itſelf*.
cela eſt bon en ſoi *le vice eſt odieux de* ſoi

The remedy which you propoſe is harmleſs of *itſelf*.
remede *propoſer* *innocent*
Men often reject truth, though in *itſelf* evident, becauſe
rejeter ſouvent vérité f *quoique* *parceque*
the ſight of it diſpleaſes them. Self-love directs
vue f *en* 58 *déplaire* *leur* 58 *amour propre* *diriger*
every thing to *itſelf*. Virtue is amiable of *itſelf*. What-
tout *vertu* f *aimable* *tout*
ever is good in *itſelf*, is not always approved. The
ce qui *bon* *toujours* *approuver*
palm-tree inceſſantly riſes of itſelf, whatever efforts
palmier *ſe rélever ſans ceſſe* *lui-même* *quelques* *effort*
are made to depreſs it.
qu'on faſſe pour abattre *le* 48

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

To forget one's birth by doing bad actions,
* *oublier* *ſa naiſſance en* *mauvais* f
or to remember it only out of vanity, is to diſho-
ſe reſſouvenir en 58 *ſeulement par* *c'eſt* * *déſhon-*
nour it equally. God requires your heart, you can-
norer la 48 *également* *demander* *cœur* m *pou-*
not refuſe it him. A flatterer has not a good opi-
voir (ir) réfuſer 58 *flatteur* * *opi-*
nion of himſelf, nor of others. A groſs miſtake
nion f 61 *ni* *autres* *groſſière* 31 *faute* f
is not only that which every reader perceives, but
n'eſt pas ſeulement celle *tout lecteur apercevoir*
it is, moreover, that which we find groſs, after
c'eſt *encore celle* *trouver* *après-que*
another has made us to perceive it. If you have
un autre *faire* 48 * *apercevoir la* 57
promiſed any thing to an enemy, you ought not
promettre (ir) quelque choſe *ennemi* *devoir*
to break the promiſe you have made him.
* *manquer à* *promeſſe que* *faire* *lui* 47

We confeſs ſmall failings, only to perſuade others
n'avouer *petit* 8 *défaut* *que pour perſuader aux*

2. A good king does not ſo much conſult *his* dignity and
bon *tant* 172 *conſulter* *dignité*, f.
elevation, as the advantage and happineſs of *his* ſubjects.
élévation, f. 37. *avantage* *bonheur*, m. *ſujet*
1. The laborious man ſhuts out idleneſs from *his* houſe, he
laborieux, 31 *bannir* * *pareſſe*, f. *maiſon*, f.
conſiders it as *his* greateſt enemy, he riſes up early, he
conſidérer 57 *ennemi*, m. *ſe lever de bon matin*
exerciſes *his* mind with contemplation, and *his* body with
exercer *eſprit dans* *corps en*
action: the ſlothful man, on the contrary, is a burden to
travaillant *pareſſeux* *au contraire* *à charge*
himſelf, *his* body is diſeaſed for want of exerciſe, *his* mind is
61 *corps* *malade* * *faute d'exercice* *eſprit*
in darkneſs, *his* thoughts are confuſed, *his* houſe is in
ténébres, pl. *penſée* *confuſes* *maiſon*, f
diſorder, he deplores *his* fate, but he has no reſolution
déſordre, m. *déplorer* *ſort* m. *mais* *le courage*
to remedy it.—3. *His* mother is dead, *her* father is dead;
d'y apporter remede *mère* *mort* *père*
his wife is handſome, *her* huſband is young.—2. *His* ambition is
femme, f. *beau* *mari* *jeune* *ambition*, f.
great, *her* ſoul is elevated, *my* hiſtory is ſhort.—1. *His* ſhame
âme, f. *élevée* *hiſtoire*, f. *court* *honte*, f.
is great.—2. *Her* hope is ill grounded.
eſpérance, f. *mal fondée*.

RULE 64.—*mon*, *ma*, *mes*, not *my*.

☞ When we ſpeak to our relations or friends, we uſe the poſſeſſive pronouns *mon*, *ma*, *mes*, before the words *père*, *mère*, *frère*, *ſœur*, &c. example;

Où êtes-vous, ma *fille*?—*me voici*, ma *mère*,
Where are you, daughter? here I am, mother.

Theſe pronouns are left out in Engliſh.

At laſt the girl being come near the houſe, *mother*, mother,
enfin *fille*, f. *venue près de* f. *mère*
cried ſhe, come out, *mother*, come out, here is a gentleman
cria-t-elle *ſortir* *voici* *monſieur*
who has brought us a letter from my father; at that ſummons
apporter 57 *lettre*, f. *père* *appel*
out came the mother, what is the matter, *child*? ſaid ſhe,
la mère ſortit *qu'avez-vous* *enfant*
ſeeing her daughter with a meſſenger, &c. Lend me your
en voir (ir) *fille* *meſſager* *prêtez moi*
knife, *brother*; I cannot, *ſiſter*, I want it. Where are you,
couteau *je ne ſaurois* *j'en ai beſoin* *où*

daughter? here I am, *father.* Come, *friends,* let us fly to
fille *me voici* *allons* *voler*
glory.
gloire, f.

RULE 65.—Monſieur before *votre* or *vos.*

We prefix in French the qualifications of *monſieur, madame, mademoiſelle,* &c. to the poſſeſſive pronouns *votre* or *vos,* when we aſk any body ſome particulars of their relations or friends, unleſs they are our inferiors or intimate friends. Theſe qualifications are not uſed in Engliſh; example;

How does your mother do? Is your couſin in town?
comment ſe porte Madame *votre mère?* Monſieur, *votre couſin eſt-il en ville.*

I have invited your ſiſters and your couſin to dine with us,
inviter *couſine à dîner*
I hope they will come.
eſpérer qu'elles venir.

Is your father at home? How does your wife do? Do
père eſt-il maiſon, f. *comment* *ſe porter*
your ſiſters learn geography? Is your brother in France?
apprennent elles, f. *frère eſt-il*
Is your aunt well? Is not your mother returned yet from
tante bien *mère n'eſt-elle pas retournée* *de*
the country. I ſaw yeſterday your father and mother, but I
campagne, f. *vis* *hier* *mère*
did not ſee your ſiſter, is ſhe ſick;
vis *ſœur* *malade?*

RULE 66.—Poſſeſſive by the Perſonal.

When the poſſeſſive pronouns are joined to a verb which denotes an action over any part of the body, they are rendered in French by the perſonal pronouns, thus; *my* is expreſſed by *me*; *his* or *her* by *ſe* or *lui*; *our* by *nous*; *your* by *vous*; and *their* by *ſe* or *leur,* before the verb; the definite article *(le, la, les,)* is put in the ſame place, where the poſſeſſive pronouns are in Engliſh; example;

He has cut *his* hand; you have cut *his* hand.
Il s'eſt coupé la *main*; *vous* lui *avez coupé* la *main.*

as if it was, he to himſelf has cut the hand; you to him have cut the hand; and ſo on for others.

Obſerve to expreſs *his* and *their* by *ſe* when the verb is reflected, and by *lui* or *leur,* when it is not.

My brother died laſt year in Germany; it was I who
mourut l'an paſſé *Allemagne*

closed *his* eyes. I will pare *your* nails, if you will cut *my*
fermer *yeux* *rogner* *ongles* *couper*
hair. My brother broke *his* leg yesterday morning. Our
cheveux, pl. *rompre* *jambe*, f. *matin*
carriage ran unfortunately over *his* body, broke *his* leg,
voiture *passer* *sur* *corps*, m. *jambe*, f.
and bruised *his* left shoulder. Do not speak so loud, you
meurtrir *gauche*, as *épaule*, f. *si haut*
split *my* head. If you do not take care, you will cut
fendre *tête*, f. *prendre garde* *couper*
your fingers. A cannon ball shot off *my* arm. Do not
doigt *balle*, f. *de canon* *emporter* *bras*
tread upon *my* foot. Wash *your* hands. Warm *your* feet.
marcher *pied* *laver* *main*.

RULE 67.—Possessive Pronouns left out.

1. When the verb does not express an action as before; the possessive pronouns *my*, *his*, *her*, &c. which come before the words *hand*, *leg*, *head*, or any other part of the body, are usually left out in French, and the definite article (*le*, *la*, *les*) is used instead of them; example;

I have a pain in *my* leg, in *my* hand, in *my* eyes.
j'ai mal à la *jambe*, à la *main*, aux *yeux*.

2. If, however, there was an equivocation to be feared, that is to say, if the sentence did not sufficiently explain whose *leg*, *feet*, or *arm*, &c. we are speaking of; the possessive pronouns should be used in French as in English; example;

I see that *my* leg swells.
je vois que ma *jambe enfle*

1. In the last battle our general lost *his* leg, my brother was
dernière bataille, f *perdre jambe*, f.
wounded in *his* shoulder, and I, who stood by him, had *my*
blesser *épaule* *moi* *étois auprès de lui*
thigh cut off.—1. He tells a story as often as he opens *his*
cuisse, f. *emportée* *mentir* * * *toutes les fois que ouvre*
mouth.—2. I see that *my* arms swell.—2. Do you think *my* foot
bouche, f. *voir (ir.)* *bras enfler* *croire* *pied*
will ever be cured?—1. It would be better for a man of pro-
vaudroit mieux
bity to lose *his* life than *his* honour by a criminal action.—
perdre *vie*, f. *honneur* m *criminel* f
1. Cæsar had *his* head bald, but he covered this defect with
tête f. *chauve* *couvrir* *défaut* m
laurels.
laurier.

RULE 68.—*Its* expreſſed by *ſon* or *en*.

1. When the poſſeſſive pronouns *its* or *their* come after the firſt verb of a ſentence, they are expreſſed by *ſon, ſa, ſes, leur*, or *leurs*; example;

All the plants of our garden have *their* properties.
toutes les plantes de notre jardin ont leurs *propriétés*
Your houſe has *its* conveniences and inconveniences.
votre màiſon a ſes *commodités et* ſes *incommodités*

2. When the pronouns *its* or *their* come after the ſecond verb of a ſentence, and could be turned by *of it* or *of them*, they are expreſſed in French by *en* before the verb, and by the definite article *le, la, les*, before the ſubſtantive; example;

Theſe plants are good, I know *their* qualities.
ces plantes ſont bonnes j' en *connois* les *qualités*
Buy that houſe, *its* ſituation is charming.
achetez cette maiſon, la ſituation en *eſt charmante*

2. This illneſs is dangerous, I know *its* origin and effects.
maladie f *dangéreux connoître origine*
—1. Jealouſy has love for *its* father, and fear for *its* mo-
jalouſie f *amour* *crainte* f
ther.—2. This is a fine tree, *its* fruit is delicious.—
voilà *arbre* m *délicieux*
1. Nobles, remember that an illuſtrious birth receives from
reſſouvenez-vous *illuſtre* 31 *naiſſance*
virtue *its* moſt ſhining luſtre.—1. Flattery has a great ſweetneſs
vertu f *beau luſtre* m. *Flatterie* f *douceur* f
in *its* voice, it is difficult not to liſten to it.—2. This water
voix f *difficile de n'y pas prêter l'oreille* *eau* f
is not good for you, I know all *its* qualities, and I would never
bon *connoître* *qualité*
recommend it in ſuch caſes.—1. Every ſcience has its principles.
récommander la pareil cas. *chaque* *principe*

2. Paris is a fine city; but *its* ſtreets are too narrow, and
belle ville mais *rue* f *trop étroit*
its houſes too high.—1. War has *its* theory like other ſciences.
maiſon f *haut.* *Guerre* f *théorie* f *comme*
—2. To paint the paſſions with art, it is neceſſary to have ſtudied
pour peindre *paſſion* *néceſſaire* *étudier*
the heart of man, and to know all *its* ſprings.
cœur m *connoître* *reſſort.*

RULE 69.—*mine*, expreſſed by *le mien*, &c.

The pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers*, &c. take always in French the definitive article *le, la, les* before them, and agree

in gender and number with the ſubſtantive to which they have reference; example;

votre jardin eſt plus grand que le mien, *mais ma maiſon eſt*
your garden is greater than *mine*, but my houſe is
plus grande que la vôtre;
greater than *yours*.

Your book is better than *mine*, but my gloves are better
vaut mieux *mais gans valent mieux*
than *yours*. His action is blameable, *yours* on the contrary
action *blammable* *au contraire*
is praiſe-worthy. I have learnt my leſſon, but my ſiſter has
digne de louange *apprendre (ir) leçon* f *ſœur*
not learnt *hers*. Your country is larger than *ours*, however
apprendre *pays plus grand* *cependant*
our king is more powerful than *yours*. Is that your book?
roi *puiſſant* *eſt-ce là* *livre*
Yes, it is *mine*. Is that your houſe? No, it is not *ours*.
eſt-ce là *maiſon*

RULE 70.—*mine* expreſſed by *mes*, &c.

☞ When the disjunctive pronouns *mine*, *thine*, *his*, *hers*, &c. are preceded by the preposition *of*, they are expreſſed in French by *mes*, *tes*, *ſes*, &c. before the ſubſtantive, which is put in the plural; example;

A friend of *mine*, a book of *yours*, &c.
un *de mes* amis, un *de vos* livres.

as if it was, one of my friends, one of your books; and ſo on for all other ſentences of the ſame kind.

I have found a book of *yours* among mine. A book of
trouver *parmi* 69
mine you ſay, ſhew it me; no, it is not mine, I am ſure,
dire montrer le moi 56 *à moi* *ſûr*
becauſe I have ſold it.
parceque *vendre*

Do you know that gentleman? yes, madam, he is a
connoître *monſieur* *madame*
relation of *mine*. A friend of *ours* came yeſterday to ſee
parent *ami* *venir* *hier* * *voir*
us, who ſpoke to us about you. If you are reſolved to pleaſe,
parler 57 *de* *voulôir (ir)* * *plaire*
never ſpeak to gratify any particular vanity of your own,
pour ſatisfaire * *particulier* 31 *votre vanité* f
but always with a deſign to divert or inform the company.
mais *dans le deſſein d'amuſer* *d'inſtruire* *compagnie*.

RULE 71.—*mine* expreſſed by *à moi.*

☞ 1. When the poſſeſſive pronouns come after the verb *to be* ſignifying *to belong*, they are expreſſed

mine by *à moi*		*ours* by *à nous*	
thine by *à toi*		*yours* by *à vous*	
his by *à lui*		*theirs* by *à eux* m	
hers by *à elle*		*theirs* by *à elles* f	example;

This book is *mine*; that houſe is *ours*.
ce livre eſt à moi; *celle maiſon eſt* à nous

2. When the verb *to be* ſignifies *to belong*, the ſubſtantive which comes after it, is put in the genitive caſe in Engliſh, and in the dative in French; example:

This horſe is *my father's*, and that, *my brother's*.
le cheval eſt à mon père, *et celui-là* à mon frère.

1. Is that your houſe?—no, it is not *mine*, I have ſold it; I
eſt-ce-là *maiſon* f *elle* *vendre*
thought it was *yours*.—1. Whoſe horſe is this?—*mine*.—2. And
croire (ir) *à qui eſt cheval*
that?—my *father's*. Whoſe gardens are theſe?—*mine*.
celui-là *à qui* *jardin* *ces*

1. Take up that watch and carry it to your brother, I think
Prendre (ir) *montre* f *porter* 56 *frère croire (ir)*
it is *his*: no, certainly, it is not *his*, he has no watch;
qu'elle *certainement elle* 18
whoſe is it then?—2. I do not know, unleſs it be my
à qui *donc* *ſavoir (ir)* *amoins qu'elle ne ſoit*
aunt's, who was here yeſterday evening.
tante *ici* *hier* *au ſoir.*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

In the ſame manner as a lame perſon would in vain
de *manière* f *qu'un boiteux* * *en vain* 172
praiſe the beauty of his legs, ſince he cannot make uſe of
louer *beauté* f *jambe*, f *puiſque pouvoir (ir)* *ſe ſervir*
them without ſhewing that they are bad; ſo a fool would in
en 58 *ſans* 139 *montrer* *elles mauvais*, *ainſi fou*
vain boaſt of his learning, ſince he cannot ſpeak without
ſe vanter *ſcience* f *puiſque* *parler ſans* 139
ſhewing his extravagance.

The depravity of human nature is ſo great, that we
dépravation f *humain* 31 f *ſi*
oftener pleaſe with our failings, than with our good
plus ſouvent *par* *défaut* *par*
qualities. It is a great comfort to have a friend to whom
qualité f *c'eſt* *conſolation* f 135 *ami à* 81
you may communicate your thoughts, and who ſhares
puiſſiez *communiquer* *pensée* *partager*
in your pleaſures and pains.
* 63 *plaiſir* *peine*

Cæſar, determined to paſs over into the iſland of
étant déterminé *paſſer* * *dans* *iſle*
Britain, diſpatched Volſenius, a lieutenant of his, to cruiſe
Brétagne *envoyer* 70 *croiſer*
on the Britiſh coaſt.
ſur *côté* f

If you will lend me your horſe to-day, I will lend
vouloir prêter 47 *aujourd'hui* *prêter*
you mine, when you want it. England was at firſt
69 *aurez beſoin en* 57 *Angleterre* 5 *d'abord*
called Albion (ſignifying rich and happy) in regard to
appeller *qui ſignifie* *heureux par rapport*
its fertility, temperature, and riches.
68 *fertilité* f 63 f *richeſſe*

Sir, here is one of your books among mine; a book of
voici *livre* *parmi* 69 *livre*
mine, you ſay, let me ſee it; no, it is not mine, it is
70 *dire (ir)* *montrez* *non* 71
my brother's. You hurt my arm. The dog has bit
frère 71 *bleſſer* 66 *bras* *chien* *mordre*
my leg. You will cut your finger. Every tongue has
jambe f *couper* 66 *doigt* *langue*
its peculiar phraſes and beauties. Hercules made a pre-
68 *particulier* 31 f *beautés* *fit*
ſent to Philocteles his companion and friend, of his arrows
m 63 *compagnon* *fleche* f
dyed in the blood of the Hydra. Men often reap more
teindre *ſang* m *Hydre* 172 *tirer* 18
fruit from their errors than from their moſt glorious actions.
63 *erreurs que* *glorieux* 31 f

CHAPTER VI.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.—*See p.* 19.

RULE 72.—*ce, cette, ces.*

☞ The demonſtrative pronouns *this* or *that*, are expreſſed by *ce* or *cet* before a noun maſculine, and by *cette* before a noun feminine; *theſe* and *thoſe* are both expreſſed by *ces*, before a noun plural of both genders; example;

Ce *tapis*, cet *arbre*, cette *maiſon*, ces *livres*, &c.
this carpet, that tree, that houſe, theſe books, &c.

N.B. *Ce* is uſed before a noun maſculine when it begins with a conſonant, and *cet* when it begins with a vowel or an *h* mute.

2. The demonſtrative pronouns are repeated in French before every ſubſtantive, though they are not in Engliſh; examp.

Je parle à cet *homme et à* cette *femme*.
I ſpeak to *that* man and woman.

This picture is fine. That man is learned. Theſe
tableau m *ſavant*
oranges are not ripe. This cake is for you, that bird
orange f *mûr* *gateau* m *oiſeau* m
is mine, theſe houſes are new. If you do not alter your
71 *maiſon* f *neuf* *changer de*
conduct, and make amends for your former injuſtice,
conduite *et ſi ne* *réparer* * *premier* f
this widow whom you have oppreſſed, this poor woman
veuve f *que* *opprimer* *pauvre*
whom you have forſaken, theſe unfortunates whom you
que *abandonnée* *malheureux*
have deſpiſed, will accuſe you in the day of judgment.
mépriſés *accuſer* 57 *au* *du jugement*
That woman is whimſical, ſhe changes her reſolution
femme *capricieux* *changer de*
every day.
tous les jours

RULE 73.—*ceci, cela.*

The demonſtrative pronouns are expreſſed, *this* by *ceci*, and that by *cela*, when they are uſed to point at ſome object without naming it; example;

Ceci *eſt pour moi*, *et* cela *pour vous*.
This is for me, and *that* for you.

Do not do *that*, I will do it myſelf. If you refuſe
ne faites pas *le* 57 *moi-même* *refuſer*
me *that*, you will repent it. This is good, that is
57 *vous vous répentir* *en* 58 *bon*
bad; this is for me, and that for you. Why did you
mauvais *pour* *pourquoi avez*
do that? You ſhould not ſpeak of that before any body.
faire *devoir* *parler*
That is good to eat. You are very curious; you aſk
à manger *curieux* *demander*
why this, and why that.

RULE 74.—ce qui, ce que.

1. The pronouns *that which*, or *what*, are uſually expreſſed by *ce qui* for the nominative caſe, and by *ce que* for the accuſative; example;

What gratifies the ſenſes, ſoftens the heart.
ce qui *flatte les ſens, amollit le cœur*

2. When *ce qui* or *ce que* begin a ſentence of two parts, *ce* is uſually repeated before the auxiliary *être*, if it is followed by a pronoun, a verb, or a ſubſtantive; but not if it is followed by an adjective without any ſubſtantive; example;

What renders men miſerable, is cupidity.
ce qui *rend les hommes miſérables*, c'eſt *la cupidité*
What you ſay is true.
ce que *vous dites* eſt *vrai*—not, *c'eſt vrai*

1. Conſider, O man! *what* the law of God commands,
conſidérer *lai* f *Dieu commander*
and *what* ſociety requires of you.—2. *What* I aſk
ſociété f *demander* * *vous* 57 *demander*
from you, is a reciprocal friendſhip, as it exiſted be-
* *réciproque* *amitié* f *telle qu'elle exiſter en-*
tween your father and mine.—2. Tragedy excites terror;
tre *le mien* *tragédie* f *exciter* 7 f
it is *that which* renders it tragical; the epic poem excites
c'eſt *rendre la* 57 *tragique* 31 *poëme* m *exciter*
admiration, it is that which renders it heroical.
rendre le 57 *héroïque*

1. Education is to the mind *what* cleanneſs is to the
éducation 9 *eſprit* *proprété* f
body.—2. What I fear moſt is treaſon.—2. What makes
corps m *craindre le plus* *trahiſon* f *fâcher*
me angry, is that you will not read your rules before
que *vouloir (ir)* *lire* *regle avant*
you do your exerciſe.—2. What you fear is to be diſ-
de *thême* *craindre* *d'* *dé-*

covered.—1. What ſhines outwardly is ſometimes very
couvert. *briller au dehors* *quelquefois* *très*
little ſubſtantial inwardly.—1. What coſts little, is too
ſolide *au dedans* *coûter peu* *trop*
dear, when it is of no uſe.
cher *n'eſt* *d'aucun uſage*

RULE 75.—*celui-ci, celui-là,* &c,

When the demonſtrative pronouns refer to ſeveral ſubſtantives antecedent, they are expreſſed, *this*, by *celui-ci* or *celle-ci*; *theſe*, by *eeux-ci* or *celles-ci*; *that*, by *celui-là* or *celle-là*; *thoſe*, by *ceux-là* or *celles-là*; example;

The ſtate of the brute is very different from that of hu-
état *brute* f *différent* *celui* *hu-*
man nature; *that* is cloathed and armed by its ſtructure,
main 31 f *vêtue* *armée* f
this is not; *that* ſoon attains his vigour and per-
ne l'eſt pas *bientôt arriver à* 63 *vigueur* f
fection, *this* continues long in infancy. Which of
reſter *longtems* *l'enfance* *laquelle*
theſe houſes do you adviſe me to buy? *This* will coſt
f * *conſeiller* 57 *d'acheter* *coûter*
me ſix hundred pounds, and *that* ſeven: I do not like
57 *cens* *livre* *ſept* *n'aimer*
either of them; if, however, you take one, I
ni l'une ni l'autre *cependant* *en prenez une*
would adviſe you to buy *this* rather than *that.*
conſeiller 57 *d'acheter* *plutôt*

RULE 76.—*celui, celle,* that.

☞ When the demonſtrative pronouns are followed by a noun in the genitive caſe, or by a relative pronoun, they are always expreſſed; *that* by *celui* or *celle*, and *thoſe* by *ceux* or *celles*, according to the gender and number of the ſubſtantive to which they have reference; example;

He has eaten his orange, and *that* of his ſiſter.
il a mangé *ſon orange* *et* celle *de ſa ſœur*
Thoſe books are better than *thoſe* which I have ſold.
ces *livres* *valent* *mieux* *que* ceux *que j' ai vendus*

The ſyſtem of Copernicus, which aſſerts that the
ſyſtême m *Copernic* 14 *aſſurer que*
earth turns around the ſun, is more probable than
terre f *tourner* *autour* *du ſoleil* *probable*
that of Ptolemy, who is of a contrary opinion. The
Ptolomée *contraire* 31 f

ſight of the mind is more extenſive than *that* of the
vue f *eſprit* *étendu* 26
body. The goods of fortune are not to be compared
corps m *bien* f * * *comparables*
with *thoſe* of the mind. The diſorders of the mind are
à *eſprit* *maladie* f *eſprit*
more dangerous than *thoſe* of the body. The term
dangéreux 26 *corps* m *tems* m
of life is ſhort, *that* of beauty is ſtill more ſo.
vie f *court* *beauté l'eſt encore davantage*

Eternal happineſs is infinitely ſuperior to *that* which
bonheur m *infiniment au deſſus de*
a man can poſſeſs in this world. The injuries which
pouvoir poſséder *monde* m *injure* f 79
we receive from a man in a paſſion, are not ſo great as
recevoir *en * colère* *ſi grand* 37
thoſe which the ſame man does on purpoſe.
à deſſein

All men hate *thoſe* who are unmindful of a
haïr (ir) *ne ſont pas réconoiſſant*
good turn. We ought to encourage *thoſe* who apply
ſervice m *devoir * encourager* *appliquer*
themſelves to arts and ſciences. This play will do
ſe 57 *ſcience* 20 *comédie* f 57
you more honour than all *thoſe* you have made before.
plus 18 *honneur* 83 *faites auparavant*

RULE 77.—*celui qui*, he who.

☞ When the perſonal pronouns are the antecedents of *who*, *that*, or *which*, they are expreſſed in French; *he who*, by *celui qui*; *ſhe who*, by *celle qui*; *they who*, by *ceux qui*, m. and by *celle qui*, f. example;

They who deſpiſe learning, know not the
ceux qui mépriſent les ſciences, n'en connoiſſent pas le
value of it.
prix

He who cannot keep a ſecret is incapable of governing.
ne peut garder m *gouverner*
Nobody is more ſpeedily oppreſſed, than *he who*
perſonne ne *opprimer*
fears nothing, becauſe ſecurity is often the begin-
ne craindre rien *ſureté* f *com-*
ning of calamity. *They who* are not ſatisfied with
mencement m *malheurs* *contens de*
what they poſſeſs at preſent, may reaſonably be
peuvent raiſonnablement

ſuſpected never to be pleaſed with what they may poſſeſs
ſuppoſer * *content* *de* 74
in future. He that never was acquainted with adverſity,
à l'avenir * *éprouver* * f
ſays Seneca, has ſeen the world but on one ſide, and is
Sénéque n'a voir *que d' côté* m *
ignorant of half the ſcenes of nature. *They who* over-
ignore * *la moitié des* f *vain-*
come their paſſions, conquer their greateſt enemy.
cre *conquérir*

RULE 78.—*celui qui*, muſt be joined.

☞ When the relative pronouns *who*, *that*, or *which*, are ſeparated in Engliſh from their antecedents *he*, *ſhe*, *they*, or *them*, they muſt be joined in French, and then the ſecond part of the ſentence is put the firſt; example;

He is contemptible, *who* ſupports idleneſs *.
celui qui *encourage la pareſſe, eſt mépriſable*
not, celui eſt mépriſable *qui* encourage la pareſſe.

He who praiſes every thing, is but a flatterer, *he* alone
77 *louer* *tout* *n'eſt qu'un flatteur* *ſeul*
knows how to praiſe, *who* praiſes with diſcretion. *They*
ſavoir * * *avec*
do not know the human heart, *who* truſt to the vain
connoître *humain* 31 *cœur* m *ſe fier*
promiſes of men. *They* do not always ſucceed, *who* take
promeſſe f *réuſſir* *prendre*
their meaſures the beſt. *He* is happy *who* wants
mésure *le mieux* *heureux* *ne manque*
nothing. They are unworthy of the glory of heaven,
de rien. *indigne* *gloire* f *ciel* m
who give themſelves up to the pleaſures of this world.
livrer *ſe* 57 * *plaiſir* *monde* m
They are happy who content themſelves with little.
contenter *ſe* 48 *de* *peu*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

We cannot ſufficiently eſteem thoſe judges who,
ne pouvoir (ir) *aſſez* *eſtimer* *les juge*
always directed by equity, never do any thing by fa-
toujours dirigés *équité* 120 *faire* * *rien* *fa-*

* Turn, *he who ſupports idleneſs is contemptible*; *and ſo on, all other ſentences of the ſame kind,*

vour or ſolicitations. We naturally expect from
veur 20 *naturellement* 172 *attendre*
others what we have done to them before. *They who*
autres 74 *faire* *leur* 57 *auparavant* 77
oppreſs the poor to increaſe their riches, ſhall be
opprimer *pauvre* *pour augmenter* *richeſſe*
puniſhed by God.
punis *de Dieu*

A philoſopher ſhuns both riches and dignities, he
philoſophe *éviter* * *richeſſe* 9 *dignité*
fears *theſe*, and deſpiſes *thoſe*. They are miſtaken who
craindre 75 *mépriſer* 78 *ſe tromper*
think that kings are the happieſt of all men. Cy-
croire (ir) *roi* 9 *plus heureux* *hommes*
rus began the Perſian monarchy, and Ninus *that* of
commencer *de Perſe* *monarchie* f 76
Aſſyria. Alexander, though ambitious, was ſenſible that
Aſſirie *Alexandre* *ambitieux* *étoit perſuadé*
he who coveted nothing was more happy than *he* who
77 *ne déſirer rien* *heureux* 77
required the whole world to himſelf.
démander *tout le monde* m *pour*

Cæſar ſaid, after the battle of Pharſalia, *he* is
dire (ir) *bataille* f *Pharſale* 78
a great general, *who* can expoſe himſelf like a
pouvoir (ir) *expoſer* *ſe* 57 *comme*
private ſoldier during the battle; but *he* is ſtill greater
ſimple *ſoldat* *pendant* f *mais* 78 *encore*
who can rejoice like a private man after the vic-
ſe réjouir *comme particulier* *après* *vic-*
tory. Wiſdom is contented with *what* is preſent, and
toire f *le ſage* *ſe contente* *de* 74
expects patiently what is to come,
attendre *patiemment* 74 *à venir*

Thoſe who ſpeak without reflexion, are expoſed to ſay
77 *ſans* *expoſer* *à*
many fooliſh things.
bien des ſotiſes

Virtue is nothing elſe but an entire conformity to
f *n'eſt autre choſe qu'* *entière* 31 f
the eternal rule of things; vice is the infringement of
éternelle 31 *regle* f m *infraction*
that rule; *this* cauſes the miſery of men, *that* makes
75 *faire* *malheur* m 75 *rendre*

them happy; let us therefore love *that* and deteſt
les 57 *c'eſt pourquoi* 75 *ayons en horreur*
this. He is truly a good man who has a natural
78 *homme de bien* 31
abhorrence of vice and love for virtue.
horreur f m *amour* f

CHAPTER VII.

OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.—*See page* 20.

RULE 79.—*qui, que,* who, &c.

☞ 1. The relative pronouns *who, that,* and *which,* are expreſſed by *qui,* when they are in the nominative caſe; *whom, that,* and *which* are expreſſed by *que* when they are in the accuſative; example;

The man *who* ſpeaks; the book *which* is on the table.
l'homme qui *parle* *le livre* qui *eſt ſur la table.*
The woman *whom* I ſee; the watch *which* I have.
la femme que *je vois* *la montre* que *j' ai*
not, *l'homme* que *parle,* nor *la femme* qui *je vois*

N.B. There is no nominative between them and the verb in the firſt caſe; but there is one in the ſecond; as you may obſerve in the preceding examples.

Cicero was one of thoſe *who* were ſacrificed to the
Cicéron *ſacrifier*
vengeance of the triumvirs. The woman *whom* God
vengeance f *femme* f *Dieu*
formed with one of Adam's ribs was the cauſe of his ſin.
former d' une 17 *côte* *cauſe* f *péché* m
The books *which* you read are good, but difficult to
livre m *lire (ir)* *bon* *difficile à*
underſtand. Synonimous terms are words *which* ſignify
comprendre *ſynonime* 31 *terme* *mot* 7 *ſignifier*
the ſame thing. Aurelius uſed to ſay, that he
même *choſe* f *avoit coutûme de dire*
would not part with what he had learnt
vouloir (ir) *donner* * 74 *apprendre (ir)*
for all the gold in the world; and that he had more glory
or *du monde* *plus* 18
from what he had read or written, than from all the
de *lire (ir)* *écrire* *que*
kingdoms he had conquered. Titus ſpent eighty millions
83 *conquis* *dépenſa*

in the public games which he gave once to the Roman
31 *jeux* *donner une fois* 31
people.

RULE 80.—*dont, de qui, duquel.*

☞ 1. The relative pronouns *whoſe, of whom,* or *of which,* are uſually expreſſed in French by *dont* for all ſorts of objects; example;

I know the man *of whom* your brother complains.
je connois l' homme dont *votre frère ſe plaint*

I have ſeen the houſe *of which* you ſpeak.
j' ai vu la maiſon dont *vous parlez*

2. If the antecedent of the pronouns *whoſe, of whom,* or *of which* was preceded by any prepoſition, we ſhould uſe *de qui* inſtead of *dont,* with reference to perſons; and *duquel, de la quelle, des quels,* or *des quelles* with reference to animals and things; example;

He is a man to *whoſe* diſcretion I dare not truſt.
c'eſt un homme à la diſcrétion de qui *je n'oſe me fier*

The heaven, without the aſſiſtance *of which* we, &c.
le ciel ſans le ſécour duquel *nous ne pouvons réuſſir*

not, *à la diſcrétion du quel,* nor *ſans le ſécour de qui*

1. All the advantages which we enjoy on earth come
avantage m *dont jouir terre* f *venir*
from God.—1. The ſame pride *which* makes us blame the
Dieu orgueil 79 *faire* 48 *blâmer*
faults of *which* we think ourſelves free, induces
faute f *croire (ir) nous* 48 *exempt porter*
us to condemn the good qualities which we have not.—
48 *à condamner qualité* f *que*
Many affect to contemn thoſe honours with the deſire
pluſieurs affecter de mépriſer les honneur m *du déſir*
of which they are inflamed.—1. The young man *of whom*
enflammés homme
I have ſpoken to you, deſerves to be encouraged.—2.
parler 57 *mériter d'être encourager*
Alexander, to *whoſe* courage * ſo many praiſes are
Alexandre courage m *tant* 18 *louange* f
given, died at thirty-three years of age.—1. The clemency
mourir à l'age de clémence
of *which* men make a virtue is often practiſed out of vanity.
faire f *pratiqué par*
2. The daughter of Minos gave a thread to Theſeus, by
fille donner fil m *Thésée*

* *That is,* to the courage of whom.

means *of which* he went out of the labyrinth.
moyen *ſortir* *du* *labyrinthe*

RULE 81.—*qui*, or *lequel*, &c.

☞ When the relative pronouns *whom* or *which* are in the dative, or after a prepoſition, they are uſually expreſſed by *qui*, in ſpeaking of God and perſons, and always by *lequel* or *laquelle*; *leſquels*, or *leſquelles*, in ſpeaking of animals an things; example;

The man *to whom* I write is very learned.
l'homme à qui *j'écris eſt très ſavant.*

The reaſons upon *which* I rely, are without reply.
Les raiſons ſur leſquelles *je me fonde ſont ſans réplique.*
not *les raiſons ſur* qui *je me fonde*, &c.

The glory to *which* heroes ſacrifice, is often a falſe glory.
gloire f *héros ſacrifier ſouvent fauſſe* f.

It is evident that there is a God, by *whom* all things are
il *il y a* *tout*
governed. Idleneſs is a vice to *which* young people are
gouverner *pareſſe* f *vice* m *jeunes gens*
much inclined. He who gets riches knows not for *whom*
encliñs 77 *amaſſer* 7 *ſavoir (ir)*
he gets them, nor for whoſe ſake he is concerned. Ulyſſes
amaſſer 48 * * *s'intéreſſe*
carried away the palladium in *which* the Trojans had a
emporter * m *Troyens*
particular confidence; it was a ſtatue of Minerva, on *which*
particulier 31 *confiance* f *c'étoit ſtatue* f *Minerve de*
depended all the ſucceſs of the war. Lying is a vice for
dépendre *ſuccès* m *guerre* f *menſonge* m m
which we cannot have too much horror. The canal of
ne pouvons *trop* 18 *horreur.* m *du*
Languedoc runs acroſs a river over which a bridge is
paſſer *ſur* *rivière* f *ſur* *pont*
built in the form of an aqueduct, under which the river
forme *aqueduc* *ſous*
continues its courſe.
continuer *cours* m

RULE 82.—*où*, or *lequel*, &c.

When a relative pronoun comes after a prepoſition, and refers to an inanimate object, it is almoſt indifferently expreſſed by *où* or by *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c. provided the verb denotes ſome motion or reſt, at leaſt figuratively; example;

Evitez les fautes où *or dans* les quelles *je ſuis tombé.*
Avoid the faults into *which* I have fallen.

Many learned people do not approve the principles
ſavant 31 *perſonne* f *approuver* *principes* m
from *which* the ſyſtem of Deſcartes is derived. If I had
ſyſtême m *dériver*
known before, the deplorable condition to *which* you
connoître *auparavant* 31 *état* m
are reduced, I would certainly have ſent you ſome money.
réduire *certainement* 172 *envoyer* 57 *argent.*
The allies of Rome, aſhamed to acknowledge as their head a
alliés *honteux de reconnoître* *pour* *maîtreſſe*
city from *which* liberty ſeemed baniſhed, ſhook off a yoke
ville f *liberté* f *paroître* *bannie* *ſécouer* * *joug* m
which they bore with pain.
portoient *peine.*

RULE 83.—*Relative Pronouns never underſtood.*

☞ The relative pronouns *whom*, *which*, and alſo the conjunction *that*, are often underſtood in Engliſh, but *qui* or *que* are never underſtood in French; and a particular care muſt be had to uſe them every time they could be uſed in Engliſh; example;

I think he will come. It is to you I ſpeak.
je crois qu'*il* *viendra* *c'eſt à veus* que je *parle*

The exerciſe you have given me to write, is too long and
donner 57 *à écrire* *trop long*
too hard. The company I keep is very honeſt. The wine
difficile *compagnie* f *honnête* *vin*
we drank yeſterday was very good. The man I have ſpoken
boire (ir) *hier* *bon* *parler*
to, is juſt come from France. The reaſons I rely upon, are
174 *arriver* *de* *raiſon* *ſe fonder* 174
ſolid. The promiſes which are hurtful to thoſe we have
ſolide *promeſſe* 79 *nuiſible* *ceux*
made them to, are not to be kept. I think you are in the
faire 174 *il ne faut pas garder*, *penſer* *avoir*
right. I believe they will make peace this year. I will never
raiſon *faire paix* f *année* f
forget the favour you have done me.
oublier *grace* f *faire* 57

RULE 84.—*Place of theſe Pronouns.*

The relative pronouns (*qui*, *que*, *dont*, *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c.) are always put immediately after the nouns to which they have reference, and agree with them in gender and number; example;

c'eſt vous qui *me l'avez dit:*
It is you *who* have told it me

Remember, O man, that thy ſtation on earth is appointed
reſſouviens-toi *état* m *terre* f *fixé*
by he wiſdom of the eternal, *who* knows thy heart, *who*
ſageſſe f *éternel* 179 *connoître* *cœur*
ſees the vanity of thy wiſhes, and *who* often denies thy
voir (ir) *vanité* f *déſir* *refuſer* *ſouvent*
requeſt. The world is a ſtage upon *which* men, always
requête f *monde* m *théatre* m 81 *toujours*
maſked, play upon one another. Let our appetites
maſqués *ſe jouer* *l'un* *de* *l'autre* *que* *appetit* m
obey reaſon, to which they are ſubjected by the law
obéir *à la raiſon* f 81 *ſoumettre (ir)* *loi* f
of nature. Grandeur of air, accompanied with freedom of
f f *accompagné* 32 *manière libre*
manners, are qualifications *which* attract general appro-
des *gagner* 31 f
bation.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Chuſe a man *whom* you eſteem, who is able and willing
Choiſiſſez 79 *eſtimiez* *ſoit capable* *veuille*
to ſerve you in need. The thing of which a miſer thinks
ſervir 57 *au beſoin* *choſe* f *à* 81 *avare penſer*
the leaſt, is to relieve the poor. The chriſtian yoke
moins *à ſoulager les pauvres* *chrétien* 31 *joug* m
is ſafer than full liberty; it is a yoke that makes the
plus ſûr f *joug* 79 *rendre*
practice of virtue pleaſant, that ſecures us from the
pratique f *vertu* f *agréable* *garantir* 57
violence of corrupt nature, and which prevents us from
f *corrumpu* 31 *nature* f *empêcher* 57
ruining ourſelves. We ſhould always remember the
ruiner 57 *devoir* *toujours* *nous reſſouvenir* *des*
cares of thoſe by whom we have been brought up.
ſoin *ceux* 81 *avoir* *élevés*

Death is an evil for *which* there is no remedy.
Mort f *mal* m *au* 81 *il n'y a point* 18 *remede*
Philip ſaid to his ſon Alexander, on giving him Ariſtotle
Philippe dire (ir) *fils Alexandre* *en donner lui* 57
for his preceptor, learn, under ſo good a maſter, to
précepteur *apprendre* *ſi bon* *maître* *à*
avoid the faults into which I have fallen. Prudence and
éviter *faute* f 82 *je ſuis tomber.* *Prudence* 9

moderation gain us the eſteem of thoſe with whom we
f *gagner* 57 *eſtime* 81
converſe. Men do not reflect enough on all the dangers
converſer *réfléchir aſſez ſur* *danger* m
to which they are expoſed. Let us conſider the effects of
81 *expoſer.* *conſidérer* *effet*
proſperity and adverſity, and then we ſhall eaſily
proſpérité f f 20 *alors* *aiſément* 172
perceive which are the moſt deſirable. Let us
apercevoir *leſquels* *le plus déſirable*
endeavour to render ourſelves able to fulfill the duties
tâcher *rendre* *nous* 57 *capables de remplir* *devoir*
of the ſituation to *which* God deſtines us. Chuſe well
état m 81 *deſtiner* *choiſiſſez*
the friend to *whom* you intend to give your confidence.
81 *vouloir* *confiance*
After the exiſtence of God there is nothing of *which* I
après *il n'y a rien* 80
doubt leſs than of the immortality of the ſoul. Ulyſſes
douter *moins* *âme*
croſſing the ſea, commanded his ſoldiers to ſtop their
traverſer *mer* f *commanda* *a* *de boûcher* 66
ears with wax and cauſed himſelf to be tied on the
oreilles *cire* f *fit* *ſe* 57 * *attacher au*
maſt of the ſhip to keep himſelf from the charms of
vaiſſeau *defendre* *ſe* 57 *charmes*
the ſyrens.

Ignorance is a diſhonour to human kind, and in a manner
deſhonneur *genre humain* *en quelque*
reduces men below the beaſts whoſe ignorance is the con-
reduire *au deſſous des* 80
ſequence of their nature, and not the effect of neglect or
leur *négligence*
indifference.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF *INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.*—*ſee page* 21.

RULE 85.—*qui?* who?

☞ The interrogative pronouns *who, whoſe, to whom,* &c. are expreſſed by *qui* or *qui eſt-ce qui* for the nominative, and by *qui* in all other caſes; but never by *que* or *dont,* as are the relative pronouns of which before; example;

qui *eſt là?* *de* qui *parlez-vous?*
who is there? of whom do you ſpeak, &c.

Who doubts that a young man who cultivates virtue
douter *jeune* *pratiquer* 9 f
and ſciences, enjoys a more ſolid happineſs, than he
ne jouiſſe d'un *ſolide* 31 *bonheur* m 77
who ſpends his life in diſſipation and pleaſure. Who is
paſſer *vie* f f *plaiſir* m
there? of whom do you ſpeak? whom can one truſt to
là * *parler* *pouvoir (ir) ſe fier* 174
now a days? For whom does a miſer get riches? whom
aujourd'hui * *avare amaſſe-t-il* 7
ſhall I apply to? whoſe book is that? who is the man
s'addreſſer *à qui* - *ce*
who can be certain of a conſtant happineſs?
pouvoir 31 *bonheur*

RULE 86.—*lequel, laquelle,* which?

☞ When the word *which* is interrogatively uſed, it is always expreſſed by *lequel* or *laquelle* for the ſingular, and by *leſquels* or *leſquelles* for the plural; example;

lequel *de vos frères eſt marié?* laquelle de *vos ſœurs*
which of your brothers is married? *which* of your ſiſters
apprend le François?
learns French?

Of all theſe pictures, *which* ſhould you like beſt?
tableau m *aimer le mieux*
and *which* do you think is worth moſt money? I
croire (ir) *valoir (ir) plus* 18 *argent*
have heard that one of your brothers is dead; pray
apprendre (ir) qu'un *frère* *mort*
tell me *which*? which of your ſiſters learns geography?
dire (ir) moi *ſœur apprendre géographie*
which of the maritime powers has the beſt navy?—
31 *puiſſance* *meilleur* *marine* f
England. Which of theſe horſes will you buy? You have
cheval
read Telemachus and Jeruſalem delivered, *which* of theſe
lire (ir) *délivrée*
two poems do you prefer?
poëmes m 91 *préferez*

RULE 87.—*quel?* what?

☞ When the pronoun *what* is uſed in an interrogative ſentence, it is always expreſſed by *quel* or *quelle* before a ſubſtantive ſingular, and by *quels* or *quelles* before a ſubſtantive plural; example;

quel *livre liſez-vous?* quelle *leçon avez-vous appriſe?*
What book do you read? *what* leſſon have you learnt?

What are your reaſons? what are her motives? what
raiſon f *motif* m *à*
paſſion is he inclined to?* what dreadful news? what
paſſion f *enclin* *fâcheux nouvelle* f
crime has this man committed to puniſh him ſo
crime m *cet homme a-t-il commettre (ir) pour punir le* 57 *ſi*
ſeverely? what is the opinion of your father on that
ſevèrement *opinion* f *père ſur*
affair? what news have you learnt in town to day?
affaire f *nouvelle* *appris*
what misfortune can we fear after we have loſt every thing?
malheur m *pouvoir* *après que* *perdre tout*

RULE 88.—*que?* what?

When the interrogative pronoun *what* ſignifies *what thing*, and is not preceded by a prepoſition, it is uſually expreſſed by *que* or *qu'eſt-ce que*; example:

que demandez-vous? or *qu'eſt-ce que vous demandez?*
what do you aſk?

What are men before God? what avail riches without
homme devant *ſervir richeſſe* *ſans*
health? what does he want? what have you done with
la ſanté *demander* *faire de*
your books? what were you doing in the garden? what
livre *faire* *jardin*
did the maſter tell you? what do you ſay of the French revo-
maître dire (ir) 57
lution?

RULE 89.—*quoi*, what?

☞ When the word *what* is in the genitive, dative, or after a prepoſition, and ſignfies *what thing*, it is always expreſſed by *quoi*, whether the ſentence is interrogative or not; example:

à quoi penſez-vous?
what do you think of it?*

If you are idle *when* young, you will not know
pareſſeux *vous êtes jeune* *ſavoir (ir)*
what to apply yourſelf to in your old age. What are
appliquer vous 57 *vielleſſe*

---

* *The prepoſitions are always placed in French before the word which they govern, and never after as they are ſometimes in Engliſh.*

you thinking of? what did you do that for? I know in
penſez à *faire cela* *ſavoir (ir)*
what you are guilty; of what do you accuſe me? in what,
coupable *accuſer* 57
pray, have I neglected to fulfil my duty? what are
je vous prie *négliger* *de remplir* *devoir*
you doing that for? what are they complaining of? what
faire *ſe plaindre*
do you aim at? what does your brother apply him-
viser 174 92 *s'appliquer*
ſelf to?
174

CHAPTER IX.

Of *INTERROGATIONS.*

RULE 90.—*où, d'où, comment,* &c.

Beſides the interrogations of which we have treated before, a queſtion is often aſked with the adverbs *combien, comment, pourquoi, où, d'où,* and ſome others; example;

où allez-vous? d'où venez-vous?

Where are you going? whence do you come? &c.

How comes it to paſs that ſcarcely any body lives content
arrive-t-il *preſque perſonne n'eſt*
with his condition? How long have you lived in France?
de f *combien* *demeurer*
How can the members of the ſame body deceive and hate
membre 92 *corps ſe tromper* *ſe haïr*
one another? why do you do that? where have you been?
l'un l'autre? pourquoi *faire cela?*
how many ſhillings in the pound?
chelin *livre* f.

RULE 91.—*Pronouns after the Verb.*

☞ 1. The perſonal pronouns are put after the verb or its auxiliary, when it is uſed interrogatively; example;

viendrez-vous? parleront-ils?

Will you come? will they ſpeak?

2. When a verb ends with a vowel, and the pronoun begins with another, we put a *-t-* with two hyphens between them; example;

chante-t-elle bien? viendra-t-il?

Does ſhe ſing well? will he come?

1. Who art thou, O man, who preſumeſt on thy own
être *préſumer*
wiſdom?—1. Have you ſeen my father?—2. Has he given
ſageſſe *voir (ir)* *donner*
you any money for me?—2. Will he come to-morrow to
57 *de l'argent* *venir demain* *
ſee me? are you in good health? are you going ſoon
voir 57 *ſanté* f *aller bientôt*
into the country? Is there any thing more great, than to
à campagne f *y a-t-il rien* 18 40
make uſe of ones talents to procure the public happineſs?
employer * *ſes* *à procurer* 31 *bonheur* m

RULE 92.—*Subſtantive before the Verb.*

☞ 1. When a ſubſtantive is the nominative caſe of a verb interrogatively uſed; the ſubſtantive is placed in French before the verb; but one of theſe pronouns *il* or *elle*; *ils* or *elles* muſt be put after the verb, as if there was no ſubſtantive before; example;

Is your father at home? are your ſiſters learned?
votre père eſt-il *à la maiſon? vos ſœurs ſont*-elles *ſavantes?*
as if it was; your father is he at home? your ſiſters are they learned? and ſo on for all others.

2. However the pronouns *il* or *elle*; *ils* or *elles*, ſhould not be put after the verb, if the ſubſtantive which is its nominative caſe was preceded by the words *who* or *what*; example;

quelle eſt l'hiſtoire des rois de France? qui étoit Jacob?
What is the hiſtory of the kings of France? who was Jacob?
not *Jacob qui étoit-il?*

Was ever any *body* more faithful to his country than
jamais perſonne fidelle pays m
Regulus, who had rather expoſe himſelf to an evident
aima mieux ſe 57 31
death, than not to fulfil his engagements? Alas! ſaid
mort f 40 *ne pas remplir* *Helas dire*
Telemachus, I am but too certain that my father is dead,
Télémaque je ne ſuis que trop *père mort*
I will go even to hell to ſeek his ghoſt; did not
aller (ir) même enfers pl *chercher ombre*
Theſeus deſcend thither? yet the profane Theſeus wanted
Théſée deſcendit y 57 *cependant* *vouloir*
to inſult the infernal deities, and it is piety which is
* *inſulter* 31 *divinité* f *c'eſt piété* f
my motive; did not *Hercules* deſcend thither? I am
motif m *deſcendre y* 57

not Hercules, but an attempt to imitate him is noble;
mais effort pour imiter 57
has not *Orpheus* by the recital of his misfortunes
Orphée récit malheur
moved the heart of Pluto? I am more worthy of com-
toucher cœur m *Pluton digne* 19
paſſion than Orpheus, for my loſs is greater.
car perte f

Has my *ſiſter* written to her huſband? is that good to
écrire (ir) mari cela à
eat? has *any body* aſked for me? is the French-maſter
manger perſonne demander * 57
come? is your book loſt? is your leſſon learnt?
venir perdre leçon

RULE 93—eſt-ce-là? n'eſt-ce pas là?

The Engliſh prefix the words *this* or *that* for the ſingular, and *theſe* or *thoſe* for the plural, to the poſſeſſive pronouns *his, our, your, their*, &c. when they aſk whoſe is ſuch or ſuch a thing; theſe queſtions are expreſſed in French; is that, by *eſt-ce là?* are theſe, by *ſont-ce là?* is not that, *n'eſt-ce pas là?* example;

eſt-ce là votre fils? ſont-ce là vos fils?
Is that your ſon? are theſe your ſons?
n'eſt-ce pas là votre maiſon? ne ſont-ce pas là vos maiſons?
Is not that your houſe? are not theſe your houſes?

Is that your houſe? Are *theſe* your gardens? Is not that
maiſon jardin
my book? Are not theſe your pens? Is this your muff?
livre plume manchon
Are theſe your gloves? Is not that my hat? Are not theſe
gans chapeau
your apples? Is that your daughter? Are theſe your brothers?
pomme fille frère
Are not theſe your ſiſters? Are theſe your horſes? Is not
ſœur
that your dog? Are not theſe your gardens?
chien jardin

RULE 94.—eſt-ce que? n'eſt-ce pas?

1. The Engliſh often aſk a queſtion, leſs to be informed if ſuch a thing is or is not, than to have the approbation of others upon what they ſay; theſe ſorts of queſtions are expreſſed in French by *eſt-ce que*, if the firſt part of the ſentence is negative in Engliſh; example;

eſt-ce qu'il eſt mort?
He is not dead, is he

2. They are rendered by *n'eſt-ce pas* at the end of the ſentence, when the firſt part is affirmative, and the ſecond negative; example;
Il eſt mort, n'eſt-ce pas?
He is dead, is he not?

1. It does not rain, does it?—2. We have ſeen the
pleut *voir (ir)*
king, have we not, brother? 1. it is not cold, is it?—2.
roi *frère* *il fait* *froid*
You learn French, do you not?—1. Your father is
apprendre le François *père*
not dead, is he?—2. It is dinner-time, is it not?—2. It is
mort *tems le dîner* *il fait*
fine weather, is it not?—2. You have received a letter from
tems m *receyoir lettre* f
your father, have you not?
père

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS, &c.

When was Rome built? what were the atchievements
quand fut 92 *bâtir* 87 *furent* *exploit* m
of king Romulus? how long did he reign? what is the
roi *combien de tems* 92 *regna* 87
hiſtory of Tarquinius Superbus? when and for what
hiſtoire f *Tarquin le Superbe* *quand* *pour quoi*
was he expelled from Rome? what efforts did he
fut *chaſſer* 87 *efforts* m
make in order to be reſtored? what was the
fit *pour* *rétablir* 87 *fut*
number of the Roman kings, and how long did
nombre m *Romain* 31 *roi* *combien de tems*
the regal authority ſubſiſt? what kind of government
royale 31 *autorité* 92 *ſubſiſta* 87 *ſorte* f *gouvernement*
ſucceeded at Rome? who were the firſt conſuls? how did
ſuccéder *furent* *premier* *comment*
Brutus ſhew his zeal for liberty? what occaſioned the
92 *montrer* *zele* *liberté* f *qu'eſt-ce qui*
ſucceſſion of the commons at Rome? when were the decemvirs
commune *décemvir* 92
created? why were they depoſed? what kind of government
créer *pourquoi* *dépoſés* 87 *ſorte* f *gouvernement*

followed? when were the military tribunes with conſular
ſuivre (ir) quand militaire tribun 92 *conſulaire* 31
authority created at Rome? when the cenſors? who were
f *crées* *cenſeur qui*
the firſt plebeian conſuls? how was the firſt triumvirate
premier 31 m *comment* *triumvirat* 92
formed? what provinces were aſſigned to the triumvirs?
former 87 *aſſignées*
what were the conqueſts of Julius Cæſar in Great
87 *conquête* f *Jules* *dans la*
Britain? what account have we of Cæſar after the
Brétagne f 87 *rapport* 14 *après*
civil wars? when and by whom was he ſlain?
f *quand* *tuer*

How long, Cataline, wilt thou abuſe our patience? how
Juſqu' à quand *abuſer de*
long ſhall thy frantic rage baffle the efforts of juſ-
frénétique f *ſe jouera-t-elle des* f
tice? to what height meaneſt thou to carry thy inſo-
juſqu'où *avoir deſſein* *de porter* 63
lence? ſeeſt thou not that the ſenators are apprized of
voir (ir) *que* *ſénateur* *informer*
thy conſpiracy? were you not laſt night in the houſe of M.
conſpiration f *hier au ſoir* *maiſon* f
Lecca, with many other aſſociates in guilt and madneſs?
pluſieurs *aſſociés en crime* *folie*
dare you deny this? why are you ſilent? oh, immortal
ôſer *nier* 73 *garder le ſilence* *immortel* 31
Gods! what country do we inhabit? what city do we
Dieux 87 *pays* m *habiter* *à quelle ville* f
belong to? what government do we live under? have
apartenir 87 *gouvernement* *vivre (ir)* 174 *être*
you not rendered yourſelf infamous by every vice that
rendre *vous* 57 *infâme* *tout* m
can brand a private life? what guilt has not ſtained
déſhonorer *privée* 31 f 87 *crime* m *ſouiller*
your hands? what pollution has not defiled your whole
main 87 *ſouiller*
body, &c.—*Cicero againſt Cataline.*
corps

How many years from the creation to the deluge? in
combien *d'années depuis* *création* f 176 m
how many days did God create the world? who was the
combien de 92 *Dieu* *créer* *monde*
firſt man and woman? who were their ſons? what was
premier *femme* *fils* *quelle*
their occupation? who was Enoch? when did he flouriſh?
occupation *quand*

what became of him? who was his ſon? how long did
que devint-il *qui* *combien*
he live? what was the uſual length of life at that
vivre (ir) *ordinaire* 31 *longueur* f *vie* f *alors*
time? by whom was the tower of Babel founded? on what
92 *tour* f *bâtie* *à*
deſign, and when? why was the building laid aſide?
deſſein m *quand* 92 *bâtiſſe* f *abandonnée*
who was Abraham? when was he called by God? what
appeller 87
is the hiſtory of his life?
hiſtoire f *vie* f

How many years from the vocation of Abraham to the
combien 18 *depuis* *vocation* f *au*
departure of the Iſraelites from Egypt? whoſe ſon was
départ m *Iſraëlites* *de qui*
Iſaac? when was he born? who was his wife? who were
92 *naître (ir)* *femme*
his ſons? who was Jacob? when did he live? how many
fils *quand* *vivre (ir)* *combien de*
ſons had he got? what is the hiſtory of Joſeph? when,
fils * 87 *hiſtoire* f *quand*
and upon whoſe invitation, did Jacob and his family
invitation *de qui* * 92 *famille* f
go down to Egypt? who was Moſes, and when was he
aller *Moïſe* *quand*
born? how was he educated? by whoſe aſſiſtance, and
naître (ir) *élevé* *de qui* *ſecour*
when, did he bring the Iſraelites out of Egypt? what mi-
quand *emmener* *hors* *quel*
racles attended the Iſraelites in their travels from Egypt
voyage
and through the deſerts? who was their high prieſt?
dans *déſerts* *grand prêtre*
when was the law given to Moſes? who was Moſes'
92 *loi* f *donnée* *Maïſe*
ſucceſſor?
ſucceſſeur m

What is the hiſtory of Joſhua and his wars? when did he
quelle f *Joſué* *guerre* 20 *lui*
and the Iſraelites come to the poſſeſſion of Canaan? when
92 *aller (ir)* *en* *poſſeſſion*
came Saul to the throne? by what means, and when, did
monta 92 *ſur* *trône* m *moyen* m
David obtain the kingdom? how long did he reign? who
92 *David* *royaume* *combien de tems* 91 *regner*
were his ſons? how long reigned Solomon? when did he
fils *regner* 92 91

dedicate the temple? what was his character? what is
dédier *temple* 87 *qu'eſt ce qui*
recorded of Judith? what was the fate of Joſiah? how
rapporter *ſort* m *combien*
long did he reign? when and by whom was Jeruſalem
de tems *quand* *qui* 92
burned? what is ſaid of Daniel? what is the hiſtory of
brûler 88 *dire* 87 *hiſtoire*
his life? how long did he live? when was Jeſus born?
vie *combien de tems* 92 *naître*
what was his miſſion? by whom and when was he crucified?
87 *miſſion* f *qui*

CHAPTER X.

OF THE DIFFERENT SORTS OF QUE*.

RULE 95.—*que, admirative.*

The *que* admirative anſwers to the Engliſh words *how, how much, how many.* The adjective, if there is any, is always put after the verb in French, and before in Engliſh; ex.

How pretty you are! *how* unhappy I am!
que *vous êtes jolie!* que *je ſuis malheureuſe!*

as if it was, how you are pretty! how I am unhappy! and ſo on for others.

How ſmall is the part of the world which is com-
petite *partie* f *monde* m *com-*
mitted to our eyes! how late it is to begin to live
ſiée *yeux* *que tart* *de commencer à vivre*
well, when death is at hand! what a piece of work is man!
mort f *proche* *de quelle excellence*
how noble in reaſon, how extenſive in faculties, and how
il eſt *raiſon* f *étendu* *faculté*
admirable in his form! *how* much trouble you take
forme f *de peine* *prendre (ir)*
for me! how many misfortunes you have undergone!
49 *malheur* *éprouver*

* *There are particularly five ſorts of* que, *called relative, interrogative, admirative, conditional, and conjunctive. As we have ſpoken at large of the two firſt, we will treat here only of the three others.*

RULE 96.—*que conditional.*

The conditional *que* is uſed in the beginning of a ſentence for the word *whether*, and in the middle to avoid the repetition of *ſi*; in both caſes, it governs the next verb in the ſubjunctive mood; example;

Whether it rains or not, I muſt go out directly.
qu'*il pleuve ou non, il faut que je ſorte ſur le champ*

If I was rich, and *bad* children, I would give them
riche que enfant 7 *donner leur* 57
a good education. *Whether* he comes or not, I do not
éducation f *venir je ne m'en*
care. If the French maſter comes, and I *am* not at
ſoucie pas 31 *maître venir que*
home, tell him, I have been obliged to go out
la maiſon dire (ir) que obliger de ſortir *
on buſineſs. *Whether* you are rich or poor, you ſhould
pour affaire riche pauvre devoir
be a man of probity.
probité

RULE 97.—*que* conjunctive.

The *que* conjunctive is uſed particularly for the following conjunctions; *afin que, amoins que, avant que, cependant, depeur que, dépuis que, juſqu'à ce que, parceque, quand,* & *pourquoi*; example;

Attendez qu'*il ne pleuve plus.*
wait till the rain is over
que in that ſentence ſtands for *juſqu'à ce que* *.

Epaminondas, having been wounded at the battle of
14 *avoir bleſſer bataille* f
Mantinea, would not allow the phyſicians to
Mantinée vouloir (ir) permettre aux medicins de
draw the arrow out of his wound, before he received the
tirer fléche f *bleſſure* f *recevoir*
news of the victory. A miſer would have all the
nouvelle victoire f *avare*
gold in the world, *yet* he would not be ſatisfied. When
or du monde m *content*
you have acknowledged your faults, and you have re-
aurez reconnoître faute f *que aurez ré-*

* *See for more examples the ſame rule in the grammar*; que *governs the ſame mood as the conjunction for which it is uſed. This rule is not difficult, becauſe the conjunction may be uſed as well* as que.

paired them, I will forgive you.
parer les 57 *pardonner* 57

Our companions pleaſe us leſs from the charms we
compagnons plaire 57 *moins par charme* m 83
find in their converſation, than from thoſe they find in
trouver *que par* 76
ours. The moment we die, our fate is determined
moment 83 *mourir (ir)* *ſort* m *déterminer*
for ever. How long is it *ſince* your father went
toujours combien *y-a-til* *aller*
into the country? You ſhall not go out *before* it is
à campagne f *ſortir* *ſoit*
light. Wait *till* the rain is over. Come here *that*
jour attendre *pluie* f *paſsée* *venir ici*
I may ſpeak to you.
parler 57

CHAPTER XI.

OF THE INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

RULE 98.—*Uſe of the Particle* on.

☞ All vague and general reports, ſuch as, *one ſays, people ſay, it is ſaid, it is reported*, &c. are rendered in French by the particle *on*, with the verb in the third perſon ſingular of the active voice; example;

On *parle de la paix.*
they ſpeak of peace

When *one* has deviated from the paths of virtue, *one*
s'eſt écarté *ſentier* *vertu* f
ought to endeavour to get into it again. It has been of-
devoir chercher *rentrer* *y* 57 *on a ſou-*
ten lamented that the origin of almoſt every nation
vent regretter *origine* *preſque* *nation* f
is either loſt in fable, or buried in obſcurity.
ou perdre f *enſevelir* *obſcurité*

People attribute the invention of gun-powder to
attribuer *cannon poudre* 23 f
Berthold Scheward of Friburgh. *It is* reported that Pytha-
Fribourg *raporter* *Pyta-*
goras required a ſilence of five years from thoſe he in-
tagore exiger *ſilence* m *ans* *ceux* 83 *in-*
ſtructed in philoſophy.
ſtruiſoit *philoſophie* f

RULE 99.—*l'on* for on.

1. *On* takes elegantly an *l'* after the words *et, ſi, u*; and alſo after *que*, if the next word begins with *com* or *con*; ex.

You have been or will ſoon be rewarded.
on vous a récompensé, ou l'on *vous récompensera bientôt.*

2. *On* never takes an *l'* in the beginning of a ſentence, nor when it is followed by *le, la, les*; example;

They ſay ſo. Put here your letter, it will be read.
on *le dit mettez là votre lettre* on *la lira*

not, *l'on le dit*; nor, *mettez là votre lettre, l'on la lira*; which would have a very bad ſound.

1. Death arrives in the moment one thinks the leaſt
mort f *arriver au qu'on penſer le moins*

of it, and *one* paſſes in a moment from pleaſure to the
y 57 *paſſer* m *plaiſir* m

grave.—1. As, when a picture is finiſhed, one
tombeau m *de même que tableau* m *fini on*

runs a riſk of ſpoiling it, if *one* adds new touches to
court riſque gâter le 57 *ajoûter* f *y*

it; ſo likewiſe you will ſpoil a period, if you unſeaſonably
57 * *ainſi phraſe* f *mal à propos*

add to it ſynonimous words, which neither contribute
ajouter 52 *ſynonime* 7 *ne contribuer*

to the clearneſs of expreſſion, nor to the embelliſhment of
ni à la clarté ni embelliſſement

the ſpeech. We learn better what we under-
diſcour m *on apprendre (ir) mieux* 74 *on com-*

ſtand, than what we do not.—2. They ſay that he is dead.
prendre 74 *comprendre*

RULE 100.—*Le même*, the ſame.

The word *the ſame* is expreſſed by *le même* or *la même* for the ſingular, and by *les mêmes* for the plural of both genders; example;

Eſt-ce là le même *livre que je vous ai prêté?*—*Oui,*
is that the ſame book which I have lent you?—Yes,

c'eſt le même.
it is the ſame.

The ſame manners which are becoming when
manière f *qui ſiéent quand elles ſont*

natural, are ridiculous when affected. It is rare to ſee two
ridicule affecter il rare de voir

perſons of the ſame temper, and of the ſame opinion.
perſonnes caractère m *opinion* f

Whatever misfortunes happen to a philoſopher, he is
quelque malheur qui arriver philoſophe
always the ſame. The ſame thing does not pleaſe at all
toujours choſe f *plaire en*
times.
tems

RULE 101.—*pluſieurs*, many.

The words *many* and *ſeveral* are uſually expreſſed by *pluſieurs*, always plural of both genders; example;

J'ai pluſieurs *livres pour vous.*
I have ſeveral books for you *.

Many poems of the firſt merit appear obſcure,
poëme m *mérite* m *paroître obſcur*
becauſe the reader is not ſufficiently acquainted with the
parceque lecteur * *aſſez* 172 *connoître* *
ancient fables, hiſtorical facts, or natural objects to
31 *fables* f *hiſtorique* 31 *fait naturel* 31 *objet* m
which the poet refers. Many had rather ſuffer the
81 *poëte a rapport aimer mieux ſouffrir*
loſs of life than a good name. When we apply to
perte f *vie* f *d'un quand s'appliquer*
ſeveral ſciences, we ſeldom ſucceed in any.
ſcience réuſſir rarement aucun

RULE 102.—*un autre*, another.

The pronoun *another* is uſually expreſſed by *un autre*, and *others* by *les autres*, unleſs it is in the genitive, or dative; in which caſes they are frequently expreſſed by *autrui*; example;

J'ai perdu mon couteau, il faut que j'en achete un autre.
I have loſt my knife, I muſt buy another.
Ne prenez pas le bien d'autrui.
do not take others' goods.

Another would not have forgiven you ſo eaſily
pardonner 57 *ſi facilement*
as I did. Another's diſgrace often deters a tender
37 17 f *détourner ſouvent*
mind from many vices. Do not ſpeak ill of others, if
eſprit m *vice mal*
you will not that others ſpeak ill of you. Charity
vouloir (ir.) que mal charité
rejoices in the happineſs of others, and is contented that
ſe réjouir du bonheur m *contente*

* *However, the word* ſeveral *is expreſſed by* different *or* differente, *when it is preceded in Engliſh by* the *or* a poſſeſſive pronoun.

others he preferred to her. Bear the imperfec-
ſoient préférer *lui* 57 *ſouffrir (ir)* *imperfec-*
tions of others without vexation.
tions *ſans*

RULE 103.—*chacun*, every one.

1. The pronouns *every one* and *every body* are both expreſſed by *chacun* always maſculine; example;
Chacun penſe à ſoi.
Every one thinks of himſelf.

2. The word *every* is always an adjective, and is expreſſed by *chaque*; example;
Chaque ſcience a ſes principes.
Every ſcience has its principles.

3. The word *each* is an adjective ſubſtantively uſed, and is expreſſed by *chacun*; example;
Ils ont chacun *bonne place.*
They have *each* a good place.

1. Every one lives after his own way.—1. Every
vivre *à* *manière* f.
body has his own faults.—1. We muſt give every body
défaut *il faut donner* *à*
his own.—2. Every country has its cuſtoms and laws.—3.
pays *coutûme* *loi*
Your brothers have each a good place.—1. Every one muſt
frère *place* f *devoir*
take care of himſelf.—3. The fables of Eſop and La
prendre garde à ſoi *Eſope*
Fontaine have *each* their merit.—2. There is in every plant
avoir *mérite* *plante* f
a certain quality which renders it wholeſome or hurtful.
rendre 48 *ſalutaire* *nuiſible*
1. Every one has his own manner of thinking and acting.
manière f *penſer* *agir*

RULE 104.—*quelqu'un*, ſomebody.

1. The pronouns *ſomebody* and *any body* are both expreſſed in French by *quelqu'un*, always ſingular and maſculine; ex.
Quelqu'un me l'a dit.
Somebody has told it me.

2. The word *ſome* or *any* are uſually expreſſed by *quelque* before a ſubſtantive, and by *quelqu'un* or *quelqu'une*, ſingular; *quelques uns* or *quelques unes*, plural, when they are not followed by a ſubſtantive; example;

Il y a quelques *défauts dans votre ouvrage.*
There are ſome defects in your book, &c.

1. When we are in town, we have almoſt every day
en ville *preſque tous les jours*
ſomebody to dine with us.—1. Has ever *any body* ſeriouſly
à dîner 92 *ſérieuſement*
doubted of the immortality of the ſoul?—2. Of the ma-
douter *immortalité* *âme* *ma-*
giſtrates, *ſome* voted the death of the admiral, and *ſome*
giſtrat *voter* *mort* f *amiral*
for his baniſhment; but the majority was to ſet him
baniſſement *majorité* f *pour mettre* 57
at liberty. The veſtal virgins were obliged to preſerve
en 31 *vierge* f *étoient obliger* *de conſerver*
their virginity while they waited on the goddeſs Veſ-
virginité *pendant-que* *ſervir* * *déeſſe*
ta; if *any* ſinned againſt that law, ſhe was burnt alive.
pecher *contre* *loi* f *brûlée vive.*
1. I have ſome books for you, and 2. ſome alſo for your brother.
livre

RULE 105.—*le tout*, the whole.

1. *The whole*, not followed by a ſubſtantive, is expreſſed by *le tout*, always ſingular and maſculine; example;
Je prendrai le tout.
I will take the whole.

2. *Every thing* is expreſſed by *tout*, without any article; example;
Tout *eſt vanité en ce* *monde.*
Every thing is vanity in this world.

1. The whole is greater than the part.—1. How much
plus grand *partie* f *combien*
do you aſk for the whole?—1. I will not ſell
demander *vouloir (ir)* *vendre*
the whole, I muſt keep a part for myſelf.—2. The
il faut que j'en garde *moi*
Pyrrhonians were philoſophers who doubted of every thing.—
philoſophe 7 *douter*
Every thing is vanity in this world.—2. Every thing diſ-
vanité *monde* m *dé-*
pleaſes you.—2. He takes every thing.—1. She takes the
plaire 57 *prendre*
whole for herſelf.—Piety refers all things to God,
f *rapporter* *tout*

ſelf-love on the contrary applies every thing to itſelf.
amour propre au rapporter à ſoi

RULE 106.—*tout le*, the whole.

1. When the words *all* and *the whole* come before a ſubſtantive, they are both adjectives, and expreſſed by *tout le*, or *toute la* for the ſingular, and by *tous les*, or *toutes les*, for the plural; example;

J'ai mangé toutes les *pommes.*
I have eaten all the apples.

2. When *tout* ſtands for *every*, it takes an article in the plural, but not in the ſingular, except with the word *monde*; example;

Toute homme eſt mortel.—Tous les *hommes ſont mortels.*
Every man is mortal.

1. All the grandeur, wealth, and power of the earth,
richeſſe pouvoir m *terre* f
cannot ſatisfy an ambitious mind.—2. The paſ-
pouvoir (ir) ſatisfaire 31 *eſprit* m f
ſions of youth are pliant to every impreſſion.—2. Come
jeuneſſe * *plient* f *venir*
and ſee us every day.——2. We naturally aſcribe to
* *voir* 57 *jours* pl. *naturellement attribuer*
God every kind of perfection, as wiſdom, power, and
ſorte f 16 *ſageſſe* f 9 *pouvoir* m
goodneſs, without bounds, exiſting through all ages,
bonté f *ſans fin exiſter dans ſiécles* m
pervading all ſpaces, providing for all mankind
remplir eſpace m *pourvoir (ir) à genre humain*
in general, and for every creature in particular.—1. The
à particulier
whole fleet is at ſea.
flotte f *en mer*

RULE 107.—*tout ce qui*, all that.

☞ The words *all that*, *every thing that*, and alſo *whatever*, ſignifying *all that*, are expreſſed in French by *tout ce qui*, or *tout ce que*, always maſculine and ſingular; example;

Tout ce que *vous dites eſt vrai.*
All that you ſay is true.
Tout ce qui brille n'eſt pas or.
All is not gold that glitters.

All that which does not tend to the glory of God, or
tendre *gloire* f 14
to the good of ſociety, is mere vanity. Every thing that
bien m f *n'eſt que vanité*
is lofty, vaſt, or profound, expands the imagination, and
élevé *vaſte* *profond* *étendre*
dilates the heart. Whatever is good in itſelf, is not al-
dilater *cœur* m *bon* *ſoi*
ways approved. Whatever tends to enlighten the under-
approuver *tendre à éclairer* *enten-*
ſtanding, or to impreſs the heart with right feelings,
dement *à imprimer dans* * *de bon ſentiment*
may be pronounced uſeful.
pouvoir (ir) *appeller* *utile.*

RULE 108.—*tout*, quite.

☞ The word *tout* is frequently uſed to expreſs the adverbs *quite*, *entirely*, *although*, or the firſt *as* * of a ſentence where two are uſed. In this caſe it is always indeclinable, except (what is worthy of notice) before a noun feminine which begins with a conſonant; example;

Elle fut tout *étonnée.*—indeclinable.
She was *quite* ſurpriſed.
Elle eſt toute *changée depuis ſa maladie.*—declinable.
She is *quite* altered ſince her illneſs.

Philoſophers, *as* learned as they are, are ſometimes
philoſophe *ſavant* *quelque fois*
miſtaken. Your mother was *quite* caſt down at that
ſe tromper *abattre*
news; however, *as* ſorry as ſhe was, ſhe received me
nouvelle cependant *affligée* *recevoir* 57
kindly, and deſired me to dine with her. This faſhion
bien *prier* *me* 57 *de dîner* *elle* *mode* f
is *quite* new.
nouvelle

Your ſiſter is *quite* altered by her illneſs. Hope, *as*
ſœur *changer* *maladie eſpérance*
deceitful as it is, ſerves at leaſt to lead us to the
trompeuſe *elle* *ſert* *au moins à conduire*
end of life through a pleaſant way. The wife,
fin f *vie* f *par* *agréable* 31 *chemin* *femme*
mother, and daughter of Darius, *as* afflicted as they were
mère 10 *fille* 14 *affligées qu'elles*

* *The firſt* as *ſhould be expreſſed by* auſſi, *if there was a compariſon of objects, as we have ſeen before, Rule* 37. *The ſecond* as *is always expreſſed by* que, *and never by* comme.

when Alexander took them priſoners, could not for-
quand *faire les* 57 *priſonnier pouvoir* *s'em-*
bear admiring his generoſity.
pêcher d'admirer *généroſité* f

RULE 109.—*quelque* indeclinable.

When the words *however*, *howſoever*, *though never ſo much*, or *ſo little*, come before an adjective, they are expreſſed by *quelque* indeclinable. The words are placed thus; 1. *quelque*. 2. The adjective. 3. *Que*. 4. The verb in the ſubjunctive mood. 5. The ſubſtantive; the reſt as in Engliſh; example;

1. Quelque 2. *grandes* 3. *que* 4. *ſoient* 5. *vos fautes*,
Though your faults are never ſo great
on *vous* *pardonnera*.
they will forgive you
as if it was, howſoever great your faults may be, they will forgive you.

Philoſophers, *however* extolled their ſentiments may be,
élevés *être*
are expoſed to ſome practical frailties as well as
expoſer *quelque pratique* 31 *faute* *auſſi bien que*
other mortals. Though men are never ſo incredulous
mortel *quelque* *incrédule*
during their life, they often change diſpoſition when
pendant *vie* *changer ſouvent* *de*
death approaches. All the nations of the earth worſhip a
mort f *approcher* *nations* f *terre* f *adorer*
ſupreme being, however different they may be in their
31 *être* m *être* 63
temper, manners, and inclinations. *Though* faſhions are
caractère *mœurs* *mode* f
never ſo fooliſh, people always follow them.
folles *on* *ſuivre (ir)* *toujours*

However ſkilful and learned we may be, let us not
habile 26 *ſavant* *ne faiſons pas*
make a vain ſhow of our knowledge.
étalage m *ſcience*

RULE 110.—*quelque* declinable.

The word *whatever*, followed by a ſubſtantive, and any other verb than *to be*, is expreſſed by *quelque*, or *quelques*, adjective and declinable. We put 1. *Quelque*. 2. The ſubſtantive. 3. *Que*. 4. The verb in the ſubjunctive; the reſt as in Engliſh; example;
Quelques *fautes que vous ayez commiſes, on vous pardonnera*.
Whatever faults you have committed, they will forgive you.

He who poſſeſſes virtue will be loved by all good men, in
77 *poſſéder* *aimer*
whatever country he lives. *Whatever* mental accom-
talent de
pliſhments a man has received from nature, he may
l'eſprit que *homme* *recevoir* f *pouvoir*
improve them by art and ſtudy. Charity does not
perfectionner les 57 *étude* f
rejoice in iniquity, *whatever* advantage ſhe may reap
ſe réjouir *iniquité* *avantage* *recueillir*
from it. *Whatever* ſervices you have done me, I have
en 57 *ſervice* m *rendre*
been thankful for them.
reconnoiſſant en 57

RULE 111.—*quel que*, in two words.

The word *whatever*, followed by a ſubſtantive, and the verb *to be*, is expreſſed by *quel que*, or *quelle que*, for the ſingular, and by *quels que*, or *quelles que*, for the plural. We put, 1. *Quel*, or *quelle*. 2. *Que*. 3. The verb *être* in the ſubjunctive mood. 4. The ſubſtantive; the reſt as in Engliſh; example;

Quelles que *ſoient vos fautes, on vous pardonnera.*

Whatever your faults may be, they will forgive you *

as if it was, whatever may be your faults; putting always the verb in French before the ſubſtantive.

Whatever your birth may be, *whatever* your eleva-
naiſſance f 63 *éléva-*
tion and glory, you ought to deſpiſe nobody. What-
tion f *gloire* f *devoir* *mépriſer* 116
ever may be the power of a king, he cannot hope to
pouvoir m *roi* *eſpérer de*
increaſe, nor even to preſerve it, if he is not particu-
augmenter *même* *conſerver* 60 *très*
larly attentive to gain the affection of his ſubjects. What-
attentif à gagner *ſujet*
ever your motives may be, your conduct will be condemned.
motif m *être* *conduite* f *condamnée*

RULE 112.—*quelque choſe que*, whatever.

1. The word *whatever*, meaning *all things ſoever*, is

* *I have repeated the ſame ſentence in theſe three rules, to render more ſenſible the application of* quelque, quelques, and quelle que.

uſually expreſſed by *quelque choſe qui* or *que*, with the next verb in the ſubjunctive; example;

Quelque choſe qu'il faſſe, ne le puniſſez pas.
Whatever he *does*, do not puniſh him.

2. *Nothing whatever* is expreſſed by *ne* before the verb, and *quoique ce ſoit* after; example;

Je n'ai trouvé *quoique ce ſoit.*
I have found nothing whatever.

1. *Whatever* happens to a virtuous man, he never murmurs againſt the Divine Providence.—2. Thoſe who apply to *nothing whatever*, are very contemptible.—1. *Whatever* may happen in our family, give me notice of it.

arriver vertueux murmurer jamais contre f 77 *s'appliquer mépriſable famille* 56 *avis* 56

2. I complain of *nothing whatever*.—1. Whatever you undertake, you will never ſucceed in it, if you do not take your meaſures better.

ſe plaindre entreprendre (ir) jamais réuſſir y 57 *méſure mieux*

RULE 113.—*quiconque*, whoever.

1. The pronouns *whoever* and *whoſoever* are uſually expreſſed by *quiconque* for the nominative caſe; example;

Whoever ſpares the bad, does harm to the good.
quiconque *épargne les méchans, fait tort aux bons*

2. When *whomſoever* is preceded by *of*, *to*, or any other prepoſition, it is expreſſed by *qui que ce ſoit que* with the next verb in the ſubjunctive mood; example;

Of *whomſoever* he ſpeaks, I do not believe him.
de *qui que ce ſoit qu'*il parle, je ne le crois pas

1. Whoever is prudent, will avoid talking much of any particular ſcience for which he is remarkably famous, becauſe he has nothing to get, and much to loſe.—2. Of whomſoever you ſpeak, avoid calumny.—2. To whomſoever you apply, they will tell you the ſame

prudent éviter de parler particulier f 81 *très fameux parcequ' rien à gagner beaucoup à perdre parler éviter calomnie* f *s'addreſſer dire* 57

thing.—1. Whoever is not aſhamed of his faults, is worthy
choſe f *n'a pas honte faute mériter*
of puniſhinent.—1. Whoever is modeſt, ſeldom fails to
* *punition* *modeſte rarement manquer de*
gain the good will of thoſe he converſes with.
gagner eſtime ceux avec qui converſer

RULE 114.—*l'un l'autre*, one another.

☞ The pronouns *one another*, and *each other*, are expreſſed by *l'un l'autre*, or *l'une l'autre*, for the ſingular; and by *les uns les autres*, *les unes les autres*, for the plural. The firſt of theſe pronouns is always in the nominative; thus, if there is any prepoſition in Engliſh, it muſt be put between them in French; example;

ils parlent mal l'un de *l'autre*

They ſpeak ill of one another; not *ils parlent mal* de *l'un l'autre.*

The faculty of interchanging our thoughts *with* one
faculté f *de communiquer penſée*
another, has always been conſidered as one of the greateſt
toujours conſidérer
privileges of reaſon, and which more particularly ſets
privilége raiſon f *élever*
mankind above the brute. It is a great injuſtice we
l'homme audeſſus de f *c'eſt* f *dont*
are guilty of *towards* one another, when we are pre-
coupable envers nous nous
judiced by the features of thoſe whom we do
laiſſons prévenir trait ceux que
not know. The happineſs of the people makes that
connoître bonheur m *peuple* m *faire* 76
of the prince, their true intereſts are connected *with* one
intérêt m *mêlés*
another.

RULE 115.—*l'un et l'autre*, both.

The word *both* is expreſſed by *l'un et l'autre*; *either* by *l'un ou l'autre*; and *neither*, by *ni l'un ni l'autre* *. If there is any prepoſition in Engliſh, it muſt be repeated in French before *l'un* and before *l'autre*; example;

je ne parle ni de *l'un ni* de *l'autre*

I ſpeak of neither of them.

I love my father and mother, I would do every thing to
père faire tout pour

* Ni l'un ni l'autre *requires* ne *before the verb.*

pleaſe them *both*. The ſlothful and the diligent are upon
leur plaire à pareſſeux de
a level, if *neither* of them knows what to do. Your
*niveau * * ſavoir (ir) quoi faire*
brother and mine have great abilities, but they *both* make
le mien talent 8 *mais faire*
very bad uſe of them. *Both* ſuſpect him, but
mauvais uſage en 57 *ſoupçonner*
neither will ſay why.
vouloir (ir) pourquoi.

RULE 116.—*perſonne*, nobody.

☞ 1. *Nobody* is expreſſed by *perſonne*, and by *ne* which is put before the verb; example;

Perſonne n'*aime le mal comme mal*,
nobody loves miſchief as miſchief.

2. Obſerve that *perſonne* is maſculine as a pronoun, and feminine as a ſubſtantive.

1. I know *nobody* ſo learned as you.—2. I know a
connoître ſi ſavant 37 *connoître*
perſon more learned than you.—1. *Nobody* more impatiently
ſavant 39 *impatiemment* 172
ſuffers injuries, than he who is moſt forward in doing
ſouffrir (ir) 77 *le premier à faire*
them. He who pleaſes *nobody*, is leſs unhappy than he
77 *plaire à malheureux*
whom *nobody* pleaſes. *Nobody* becomes very debauched or
à qui plaire devenir débauché
virtuous on a ſudden.
vertueux tout à coup.

RULE 117.—*pas un*, *aucun*, none.

☞ The pronoun *none* is expreſſed by *aucun*, and *not one* by *pas un*; both require the particle *ne* before the verb; example;

Aucun *des juges n'étoit contre vous*;
None of the judges were againſt you;
Tous les ſoldats ont été faits priſonniers, pas un n'*a échapé*;
All the ſoldiers have been taken priſoners, *not one* has eſcaped.

Of all the nations of the earth, there is *none* but has an
nation f *terre* f *il n'y en a qui n'ait*
idea of God. Of the great number of friends who
idée f *nombre* m *ami*
ſurround us in proſperity, there often remains *not one* in
environner 57 *proſpérité* f *il n'en* 172 *reſter dans*

adverſity. Fortune frees many bad men from puniſhment,
f *ſauver* *punition* f
but *none* from fear. I had many friends, yet *not one*
mais *crainte* f *bien des* *cependant*
has relieved me.
ſécourir (ir) *me* 57

RULE 118.—*rien*, nothing.

☞ The word *nothing* is expreſſed by *rien* and by *ne* before the verb; example:

Rien ne *doit empêcher un chrétien de dire la vérité*
nothing ſhould hinder a chriſtian from telling truth.

God requires *nothing* from us, but what is for our
14 *demander* * 57 *que* 74
advantage. *Nothing* is more common than the word
avantage *common* 39 *mot*
friendſhip, and *nothing* more rare than a true friend.
amitié *rare* *véritable*
Nothing is more dangerous for a young man, than bad
dangéreux
company. Charity does nothing without conſideration
compagnie. *Charité* 9 *faire* *ſans*
and order.
et ſans ordre.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE.

Idleneſs is the mother of all vices. Charity is the firſt
pareſſe 9 *mère* *vice* m *charité* 9 *première*
of all virtues. Though true love is never ſo uncommon,
vertu f 109 *véritable* *rare*
yet it is leſs ſo than true friendſhip. With you every
cependant *le* 57 f 106
road is eaſy, every river fordable, every country fertile.
chemin *facile* *rivière* f *guéable* *pays* m *fertile.*
Whatever may be the happineſs of the grandees of the
111 *bonheur* m *grands*
earth, a true chriſtian ſhould propoſe to himſelf one more
terre f *chrétien devoir* *propoſer* *s'en* 58 *un*
ſolid and laſting.
ſolide *durable*

One is truly amiable, when one is modeſt and learned
98 *vraiment aimable* *modeſte* *ſavant*

at the ſame time. Your ſiſters, as handſome and amiable
au *tems* m *ſœur* 108 *belle* *amiable*
as they are, do not marry. Whoever cannot bear
qu'elles *ſe marier* 113 *pouvoir (ir)*
ſuffering, has not a great ſoul. Alexander uſed to ſay,
ſouffrir *grand âme* f *Alexandre avoit coûtume de*
I am as indebted to Ariſtotle, as to my father; for if I am
auſſi redevable *père*
indebted for life to the one, I am indebted for virtue to
vie f *l'un* *vertu* f
the other. You ſhould not diſtruſt one another as you do.
vous défier de 114 *faire*

Whoever attentively conſiders the miſery of human
113 172 *conſidérer* *miſère* f *humain* 31
life, will certainly prepare for a better; ſince infancy
vie f 172 *ſe préparer* *meilleure* *enfance* 9
is attended with folly, youth with diſorder, and old age
ſe paſſe dans folie f *jeuneſſe* f *déſordre* m *vielleſſe* f
with infirmities.
infirmité

If you would be happy, deſire nothing too
voulez *heureux* *déſirer* *rien* 118 *avec trop*
eagerly, rejoice not exceſſively, nor grieve too
d'empreſſement, ſe réjour *exceſſivement et ne s'affliger trop*
much for diſaſters; and above all, never forget the concerns
malheur *ſurtout* 120 *oublier* *ſalut* m
of your ſoul.
âme.

Nobody can flatter himſelf he ſhall live till to-morrow.
116 *flatter* *ſe* *qu'il* *vivre juſqu'à demain*
The people often ſuffer by the wars which princes
peuple 172 *ſouffrir (ir)* *guerre* f
make with one another. Whoever diſcovers ſecrets loſes
ſe faire à 114 113 *découvrir (ir)* *perdre*
his credit. Honours, whatever they are, do not make
crédit m *honneur* m 111 *ſoient* *rendre*
men truly great, if they have no perſonal merit. With
vraiment 18 *perſonnel mérite* m
time and patience we tame the wild beaſts, though
le tems f *aprivoiſer* *ſauvage* 31 *béte* f *quelque*
never ſo ſavage.
farouches qu'elles ſoient.

Every moment is dear to him who knows the value of
106 *cher* 77 *connoître* *prix* m

time. Every man ſeeks tranquillity, and nobody finds it.
tems 106 *chercher* f 116 *trouver* 48
Envy and hatred are always united and ſtrengthen one
haine f *unir* 143 *ſe fortifier* 114
another in the ſame ſubject; they can only be diſtinguiſhable
ſujet m
from one another in this; the one keeps cloſe to the perſon,
114 *ceci* *s'attacher* f
and the other to his ſituation.
état m

CHAPTER XII.

SEVERAL MODES OF NEGATION.

RULE 119.—*ni, ni ne,* neither.

☞ 1. When *neither* and *nor* come before two nouns or two verbs in the infinitive mood, they are both expreſſed by *ni*, and by *ne*, which is put before the firſt verb; example;
Il ne *ſait* ni *lire*, ni *écrire*.
he knows *neither* how to read *nor* write.

2. If they come before two verbs in any tenſe of the indicative, *neither* is expreſſed by *ne*, and *nor* by *ni ne*; example;
Je ne *les aime* ni ne *les hais*;
I *neither* love *nor* hate them;
Je ne *vous loue* ni ne *vous blame*.
I neither praiſe nor blame you.

1. Henry the fourth was a great king; *neither* his palace
11 *roi* *palais*
nor his heart were ſhut againſt any part of mankind;
cœur m *fermer* *à* *genre humain*
but they were particularly open to men of merit.
mais *particulièrement ouverts* *mérite*
—2. Adverſity *neither* troubles the juſt, *nor* caſts him
adverſité 4 *troubler* *juſte* *abattre (ir) le* 57
down, proſperity *neither* makes him proud, *nor* ſwells him
* *proſpérité* f *rendre le* 57 *fier* *enfler le* 57
up.—1. Virtue is *neither* loſt by ſhipwreck, *nor* changed
* *vertu* f *perdre* *naufrage* m *changer*
by the alterations of time.—2. I *neither* love *nor* hate you,
tems *aimer* *haïr* 57
you *neither* pleaſe *nor* diſpleaſe me.—1. You can *neither*
plaire *déplaire me* 60 *ſavoir (ir)*
read *nor* write.—1. We deſpiſe thoſe who are uſeful *neither*
lire *écrire* *mépriſer ceux* *utile*

to themſelves, *nor* to others.
eux-mêmes

RULE 120.—*ne jamais*, never.

☞ *Never* is expreſſed in French by *jamais*; by *no means* is rendered by *nullement*; both require *ne* before the verb; example;

Ne *parlez jamais mal de perſonne*;
Never ſpeak ill of any body;
Je n'*approuve nullement votre conduite.*
I by no means approve of your conduct.

Never make public what has been truſted to you in
rendez *cequi* *confier* * 57
ſecret. Shining characters are not always the moſt
brilliant 31 *caractère* m
agreeable, the mild radiance of an emerald is by no *means*
agréable *doux* *émeraude* f
leſs pleaſant than the glare of a ruby. Time paſt *never*
agréable 39 *éclat* *rubie* m *paſſé*
returns, and a word once uttered, *never* can be recalled.
retourner *mot une fois prononcé* *rappeller*
Scipio Africanus uſed to ſay, that he was *never* leſs at
Scipion l'Africain *de dire* *jamais moins*
leiſure, than when at leiſure; nor leſs alone, than when
loiſir *quand il étoit à* *ſeul* *quand il étoit*
alone.
ſeul.

RULE 121.—*aucun*, *non*, no.

☞ 1. When the word *no* comes before a ſubſtantive, it is uſually expreſſed by *aucun* or *aucune* for the ſingular, and by *aucuns* or *aucunes* for the plural, with *ne* before the verb; example;

Il n'y a aucune *connoiſſance plus utile que celle de nous-mêmes*
There is *no* knowledge more uſeful than that of ourſelves.

2. The word *no* is expreſſed by *non*, when it is uſed in anſwer to a queſtion; example;

Do you learn geography?—*no*, Sir.
apprenez-vous la géographie?—non, *monſieur.*

1. *No* bounds can reſtrain the glory of the Almighty, *no*
limite *reſtreindre* *gloire* f *tout-puiſſant*
dimenſion of time can limit his reign. There is *no* grief
dimenſion *tems* *limiter* *regne* m *il n'y a* *chagrin*
which length of time does not leſſen or mollify. A
le tems *diminuer* *n'adouciſſe*

clear conſcience needs *no* excuſe, and fears *no* accuſa-
pure 31 f *avoir beſoin* *craindre*
tion.—1. *No* inheritance can ſupply the want of a good
héritage *ſupléer au défaut*
education.—1. *No* revenge is more heroical, than that which
éducation *vengeance* *héroïque* 76
torments envy by doing good.—2. Have you ſeen the
tourmenter envie en *le bien* *voir (ir)*
queen of England?—*No*, I have not.—2. Do you know the
reine *Angleterre* 5
king?—*No*, madam. 1. *No* reverſe of fortune ought to alter
revers *devoir* *altérer*
friendſhip.
amitié.

RULE 122.—*ne pas*, or *nan*, not.

☞ 1. The word *not* is expreſſed by *ne* before the verb or its auxiliary, and by *pas* or *point* after; example;

I do *not* ſpeak; we have *not* ſpoken to him.
Je *ne* parle *pas*; nous *ne* lui avons *pas* parlé.

2. *Ne* and *pas* go both before the verb, when it is in the preſent of the infinitive; example;

I will do it, *not* to diſpleaſe your father.
Je le ferai pour ne pas *déplaire à votre père.**

1. As the earth does *not* always produce roſes and lilies, but
terre f *toujours produire* 7 *lis* 7 *mais*
likewiſe nettles and thiſtles; ſo the world does *not* always
auſſi *ronces* 7 *épine* 7 *monde* m *
afford us contentment and pleaſures, but ſometimes
donner 57 *contentement* 7 *plaiſir* 7 *quelquefois*
afflictions and troubles.
7 *peine* 7

2. You muſt be blind not to ſee, that this man
il faut que vous aveugle pour voir cet homme
wants to deceive you.—To forgive our enemy, before
vouloir (ir) * *tromper* 57 * *à ennem avant qu'il*
he is ſenſible of his faults, is to encourage him in
ſoit perſuadé *faute* *c'eſt* * *encourager* *le*
his faults; *not* to forgive him at all, is to ſin
* *lui* 57 *dutout c'eſt* * *pécher*
one's ſelf.
ſoi-même.

---

* Not *followed by* that, *is expreſſed by* non que *or* non pas que, as *je le ferai*, non que *j'y ſois obligé*, *mais pour avoir la paix*: *I will do it*, *not that I am obliged to it*, *but to have peace.*

RULE 123.—*ne* without *pas*, not.

The word *not* is expreſſed by *ne* without *pas*, when it is joined to the verbs *ceſſer*, *ôſer*, *pouvoir*, and alſo to *ſavoir* uſed for *to be able*; example;

Il ne *ceſſe de ſe plaindre.*
He does not ceaſe complaining.
Je ne *ſaurois parler François.*
I cannot ſpeak French.

not, il ne ceſſe pas de ſe plaindre, nor je ne ſaurois pas parler François.

As antiquity *cannot* authoriſe an error, ſo novelty
antiquité *autoriſer* *erreur* f *ainſi* *nouveauté*
cannot prejudice truth. When we dare *not* blame
porter préjudice à *ôſer* *blâmer*
a prince after his death, it is a ſign that his ſucceſſor
après *mort* f *c'eſt ſigne* m *ſucceſſeur* m
is like him. Some people do *not* ceaſe to complain
reſſembler lui 57 *perſonne* *ceſſe de ſe plaindre*
of fortune, though they are loaded with its favours.
f *quoiqu'ils ſoient chargés* 32 *ſes faveurs*
When Darius offered Alexander to divide equally Aſia
offrit à *de partager également Aſie* 5
with him, he anſwered the earth *cannot* bear two ſuns,
49 *répondre*, *terre* f *pouvoir* *ſoleil*
nor Aſia two kings.
ni *Aſie* *rois.*

RULE 124.—*Diſtinction of* pas *and* point.

1. *Point* denies abſolutely and ſignifies not at all; *pas* denies ſometimes but in part; thus this ſentence, *tous ceux qu'on accuſe ne ſont* point *coupables*, ſignifies that none of the accuſed are guilty; and that, *tous ceux qu'on accuſe ne ſont* pas *coupables*, ſignifies only that they are not all guilty.

2. We make uſe of *point* in an interrogative ſentence, when we doubt of a thing, and of *pas* when we are perſuaded of it; thus in this ſentence; *n'avez vous* point *vu mon frère?* I doubt if you have ſeen him or not; and in this, *n'avez-vous* pas *vu mon frère?* I am perſuaded you have ſeen him.

Though this diſtinction be exact, and conformable to the practice of the beſt authors, yet it is not always obſerved; and there are many caſes, in which *pas* and *point* can be almoſt indifferently uſed.

RULE 125.—*que ne*, than.

☞ When the word *than* comes before a verb in any tenſe of

the indicative mood, it is uſually expreſſed by *que*, and by *ne*, which is put before the verb; example;

Il eſt plus jeune que *je* ne *croyois.*
He is younger *than* I thought.
not, *il eſt plus jeune que je croyois.*

Courage is oftener allied to vice, *than* cowardice is to
m *plus ſouvent allier* m *lâcheté*
virtue. We deſpiſe thoſe who ſpeak otherwiſe *than* they
vertu f *mépriſer* 76 *autrement*
think. Ireland is more powerful at preſent, *than* were
penſer. Irelande 5 f *puiſſant* *être*
the three kingdoms at the death of queen Elizabeth.
royaume *mort* f *reine* f
A traveller often relates things otherwiſe *than* they are.
voyageur 172 *rapporter* *autrement*

RULE 126.—*ne* after *craindre*, &c.

☞ The particle *ne* is uſed in French after the verbs *craindre*, *appréhender*, *avoir peur* and *empêcher*, when they are affirmatively uſed; but not when negatively; example;

I fear he will do it. I do not fear he will do it.
Je crains qu'il ne *le faſſe. Je ne crains pas qu'il le faſſe.*

From theſe examples you may obſerve, that there is always a negation in the ſentence where theſe verbs are uſed, and never two.*

I have not heard of my ſon for theſe ſix months; I
entendu parler *depuis* * *mois*
fear leſt ſome misfortune has befallen him. I
craindre que *malheur* *ſoit* *arriver lui* 57
fear my father will come; I do not *fear* he will come.
craindre *venir*
I will hinder him from puniſhing you; I will not
empêcher le 57 *de* *punir* 57
hinder him from puniſhing you, becauſe you deſerve it.
empêcher le 57 *punir* 57 *parceque* *mériter le* 57

RULE 127.—*ne* after *a moins que.*

☞ The particle *ne* is uſed in French after the conjunctions *amoins que*, *de crainte que*, *de peur que*, *ſi* for *unleſs*, and *que* for *before*; though there is no negation in Engliſh; example;

Amoins que vous ne *le puniſſiez, il n'étudiera pas.*
Unleſs you puniſh him, he will not ſtudy.*

* *Theſe verbs and conjunctions govern the ſubjunctive mood.*

No man was ever caſt down with the injuries of
perſonne *abattre* *par* *revers*
fortune, *unleſs* he had before ſuffered himſelf to be
f *amoins qu'il* *ſe fût auparavant laiſſé ſ* 57 *
deceived by her favours. I will not go in the country
tromper *faveur* *aller (ir) à campagne* f
unleſs you come with me. Go home *for fear* my
amoins que venir 89 *aller à la maiſon de crainte que*
father comes, and finds you here. A judge ought to
ne trouver 57 *ici* *juge devoir* *
examine his own heart *leſt* paſſion prevent juſtice.
examiner *cœur* m *de peur que* 9 f *empêcher* f
I will not forgive you *unleſs* you beg pardon.
pardonner 57 *à moins que* *demander*

RULE 228.—*ne que*, but.

☞ When the words *but* or *only* come after a verb without any ſtop between them, they are uſually expreſſed by *ne* before it and by *que* after; example;

Je n'ai que peu d'amis.
I have *but* few friends.
Il n'a que douze ans.
He is *but* twelve years old*.

Knowledge without humility, produces nothing *but*
ſcience 9 f *humilité* *produire* *
pride, vanity, and preſumption. We confeſs ſmall
orgueil 9 *vanité* 9 f *préſomption* 7 f *avouer* 8
failings *only* to perſuade others that we have not great
défaut *pour perſuader aux autres* 18 *grand*
ones. I am *but* twenty years old. God requires nothing
as 87 *avoir* *ans* * *demander* *
of us *but* what is for our advantage. Friendſhip is to be
* 74 *avantage* *amitié* 9 *peut*
purchaſed *only* by friendſhip.
s'acheter *par*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE.

There is no reproof more mild, no exhortation more
il y a 121 *réproche* m *doux* 121 *exhortation* f

---

* *However*, qui *is uſed when there is no nominative between it and the verb. Example*: il n'y a perſonne *qui* ne craigne la mort, *there is nobody but fears death.*

effectual, than good example. Afflict nobody, never blame
efficace *exemple* m *affliger* 116 120 *blâmer*
without reaſon, never reprove with paſſion, and be always
ſans *raiſon* 120 *réprimander*
ready to pardon injuries. Two things cannot be more
prêt *à pardonner* *injure* *choſe* *pouvoir (ir)*
contradictory than truth and falſehood; yet, perhaps, none
contradictoire *vérité* f *fauſſeté* f *peutêtre* 117
are ſo mixed and united. Charity never looks on others
mêlées *unir* *charité* f 122 *regarder*
with contempt.
mepris

No ſtrength of genius, or vivacity of wit, can excuſe
121 *force* f *génie* *vivacité* *eſprit* *excuſer*
immorality in authors. There would be neither navigation,
auteur *il y auroit* 119 *navigation*
nor agriculture, without the induſtry of men. What is
ſans *induſtrie* *homme* 74
done with paſſion, can neither be done well, nor be
fait *en colère* *ne pouvoir (ir)* 119 *fait*
approved by any body. The waves of the channel are
approuver *de perſonne* *vague* f *manche* f
not more agitated by the winds of the eaſt or the weſt,
122 *agitées* *vent* *orient* *occident*
than my heart was, when I heard of that ſorrowful
125 *cœur* m *apprendre (ir)* *fâcheux*
accident.
accident.

Unleſs magiſtrates are on their guard, they will
amoins que 127 *magiſtrat* *ſoient* *garde*
be made inſtruments of the revenge of wicked men.
devenir *vengeance* f *méchans*

There is no object more pleaſing to the eye than the ſight
il y a 121 *objet* *agréable* *œil* *vue* f
of a man whom you have obliged.
homme 79 *obliger.*

CHAPTER XIII.

OF THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

RULE 129.—*Verbs which govern the Genitive.*

☞ The verbs which govern the genitive in French are,
1. the following, *abuſer*, *avoir beſoin*, *avoir pitié*, *hériter*,

jouir, *manquer*, *médire*, *rougir* and *uſer*, whatever caſe they govern in Engliſh; example;

He traduces every body. I enjoy a good health.
Il médit de *tout le monde*. *Je jouis* d'*une bonne ſanté*.
not, *il médit tout le monde*; not, *je jouis une bonne ſanté*.

2. Moſt of the reflected verbs; example;

He repents his faults; ſhe diſtruſts every body.
Il ſe répent de *ſes fautes*; *elle ſe défie* de *tout le monde*.

3. Moſt of the verbs followed by the prepoſitions *of*, *from*, *with*, or *by*; example;

I am loaded *with* ſpoils. He is loved by *his* maſter.
Je ſuis chargé de *butin*. *Il eſt aimé* de *ſon maître*.
not, *je ſuis chargé* avec *butin*, nor *il eſt aimé* par *ſon maître*.

2. The impious *mock* at virtue, and ridicule religion.—
ſe moquer *vertu* *tourner en ridicule*.
2. Do not *laugh* at others' misfortunes inſtead of pitying
ſe moquer *malheur* *au lieu de avoir pitié*
them.—1. You *abuſe* the favours of fortune, and you do
abuſer *faveur*
not *uſe* your victory with moderation.—1. Death *pities*
uſer *victoire* *modération* *mort* f *avoir*
nobody, neither rich nor poor.—1. Never *traduce* any body.
pitié *ni du riche* *pauvre* *médire* *perſonne*

3. Covetous men are *tormented with* the deſire of increaſing
avare * *tourmenter* *déſir d'augmenter*
what they have, and the fear of loſing it.—1. Nature
74 *de la crainte* f *perdre le* 57 f
wants few things.—3. She is *contented with* little.
avoir beſoin *ſe contenter* *peu*
—1. It is grievous to *want* money in a foreign country.
il eſt fâcheux de manquer argent *étranger* 31 *pays*.

RULE 130.—*Verbs which govern the Dative.*

The following verbs, *conſentir*, *contrevenir*, *contribuer*, *déſobéir*, *déplaire*, *nuire*, *obéir*, *obvier*, *pardonner*, *penſer*, *remédier*, *reſſembler*, *reſiſter*, *ſonger*, *ſubvenir*, *ſuccéder*, and *ſurvivre*, govern the dative in French, whatever caſe they govern in Engliſh; example;

Il obéit à *ſon maître*. *Vous plaiſez* à *tout le monde*.
He obeys his maſter. You pleaſe every body.
not, il obéit ſon maître, *nor* vous plaiſez tout le monde.

Flattery can *hurt* nobody, but him whom it *pleaſes*. If
flatterie f *nuire perſonne qu'à celui* *plaire*

we do not *forgive* others, we muſt not expect that God
pardonner *il ne faut pas eſpérer* *Dieu*
will forgive us. Remember, O my ſon, the counſel
pardonner 57 *ſe reſſouvenir* 129 *fils* *conſeil* m
I give thee, it will profit thee much, *obey* the law of
donner 57 *profiter* 57 *beaucoup obéir* *loi* f
God, *obey* the king and all the ſubordinate magiſtrates,
roi *ſubordonné* *magiſtrat*
reſiſt your paſſions, *forgive* your enemies, *hurt* nobody,
réſiſter *pardonner* *ennemi nuire perſonne* 116
and do not *yield* to the allurements of pleaſure. He that
céder *attrait* *plaiſir* m 77
reſiſts his evil inclinations, deſerves greater praiſe than he
réſiſter *mauvais* f *mériter* *éloge* 77
who conquers nations, and cannot command his paſſions.
conquérir (ir) *pouvoir* *commander à*

RULE 131.—*Verbs which govern the Accuſative.*

All the verbs which can be turned by the paſſive voice, govern the accuſative in French, whatever caſe they govern in Engliſh; example;

J'accepte votre offre.
I accept of your offer.

God accepts of our endeavours after holineſs, provided
accepter *effort* *ſainteté* *pourvu*
they are ſincere. He that was never acquainted with ad-
qu'ils ſoient 77 *connoître* * *ad-*
verſity, ſays Seneca, knows the world but on one ſide.
verſité *Sénéque connoître* *monde* 128 *côté* m
If you ſeek for happineſs any where but in God, you
chercher * *bonheur* m *ailleurs* *que*
are ſure to be diſappointed. Henry the Fourth looked
tromper 11 *regarder*
upon good education of youth as a thing upon which
* f *jeuneſſe* f *comme choſe* f *d'où*
depends the felicity of kingdoms and people.
dépendre *bonheur* m *royaume* *peuple*

RULE 132.—*Accuſative* and *Genitive.*

The following verbs, *abſoudre, accabler, accepter, accuſer, avertir, bannir, blâmer, chaſſer, corriger, débuſquer, dégoûter, délivrer, détourner, diſſuader, emplir, enfreindre, exclure, expulſer, fléchir, implorer, informer, louer, menacer, obtenir, priver, recevoir, ſoupçonner,* and few others, govern the accuſative of the perſon and the genitive of the thing; example;

Chaſſer les impies de la ſociété.
To expel the impious from ſociety *.

It is the part of a fool to accuſe another of a fault
c'eſt le fait fou d'accuſer un autre faute f
of which he is himſelf guilty. Our infirmities often
80 *lui-même coupable infirmité* 172
remind us of mortality, ſickneſs warns us of
faire reſſouvenir 57 f *maladie avertir* 57
death, adverſity ought to admoniſh us of our duties,
mort f *adverſité devoir* * *avertir* 57 *devoir*
and make us think of religion. To load an enemy
faire penſer 130 * *charger ennemi*
with injuries; to accept the offers of a friend; to exclude
d' injure * *accepter offre ami* * *exclure*
a liar from ſociety; to free one's country from tyranny.
menteur délivrer ſon pays m *tyrannie* f

RULE 133.—*Accuſative and Dative.*

The following verbs, *accorder, addreſſer, annoncer, apporter, attribuer, avouer, communiquer, confier, conſeiller, déclarer, dédier, demander, devoir, dire, donner, écrire, enſeigner, envoyer, épargner, expliquer, ôter, pardonner, prédire, préférer, prendre, préſenter, prêter, procurer, promettre, raconter, rapporter, rendre, refuſer, renvoyer, répéter, reprocher, répondre, révéler, vendre,* and few others, govern in French the dative of the perſon, and the accuſative of the thing, whatever caſe they govern in Engliſh; example;

Otez cette épée à votre fils.
take that ſword from your ſon.

We muſt *give* children an honeſt liberty, and forgive
il faut enfant honnête pardonner
them the faults which they commit by ignorance or
leur 57 *faute commettre (ir)*
levity. Aſk nothing of your friend, but what is
légereté demander 118 *ami que* 74
right. Prefer virtue to riches. If we were allowed
juſte préférer vertu f *riche ſſes s'il nous étoit permis*
to *take* away from others, whatever we ſhould think
de prendre * *autre* 107 *juger*
proper, the ſociety of men would be ſoon overturned.
à propos ſociété f *bientôt renverſer*

---

* *When thoſe verbs govern one noun only, it is uſually put in the accuſative, whether it has reference to a perſon or to a thing.*

When I ſee birds build their neſts with ſo much art
voir oiſeau bâtir nid tant 18 *art*
and ſkill, I aſk what maſter has *taught* them
addreſſe demander maître enſeigner leur
mathematics and architecture? Juſtice *gives* every body
mathématique f *donner chacun*
his own. Intemperate youth tranſmits a waſted body
le ſien intempérée jeuneſſe tranſmettre épuisé 31 *corps*
to old age.
vieilleſſe f

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the GOVERNMENT of VERBS.

It is the duty of a chriſtian to pleaſe God, to hurt
c'eſt devoir chrétien de plaire 130 *nuire*
nobody, and to do good even to his enemies. An honeſt
116 *bien* 7 *même ennemi honnête*
man ought to endeavour to ſatisfy his creditors. We
devoir * *tâcher de ſatisfaire créanciers*
ought to uſe diligence, and not to abuſe time, be-
devoir * *uſer* 129 *et* 122 * *abuſer* 129 *tems parce-*
cauſe the life we enjoy is ſhort. Fortune often ſnatches
que vie f *dont jouir court* f *ôter* 133
away wealth from the rich; but ſhe cannot take
* *richeſſes riche mais pouvoir (ir) ôter* 133
away probity from the virtuous.
probité vertueux

Solomon aſked wiſdom of God; God ſaid unto
Salomon demanda 133 *Dieu dit* *
him, becauſe thou haſt aſked this thing of me, and
lui 57 *parceque demander cette me* 57
haſt not aſked long life, nor riches, nor the life of thy
longue richeſſes 7 *vie* f
enemies, I have given thee a wiſe and underſtanding heart,
ennemi donner 57 31 *intelligent cœur* m
alſo riches and honour. We cannot eaſily withſtand
richeſſes 7 *honneur pouvoir aiſément réſiſter* 130
the allurements of pleaſure.
attrait plaiſir m

The place is encompaſſed on all ſides with craggy
place f *environner de côté* m *de eſcarpé* 31
rocks, ſo that it needs no troops to defend
rocher ſi bien qu'elle avoir beſoin 129 *pour*
it; ſuch is the fruitfulneſs of the adjacent ſoil, that it
la 57 *telle fertilité* f 31 *terrein* m

is filled with its own riches; and ſuch is the plenty
remplir 129 *propre richeſſe* *telle* *abondance*
of fountains and woods, that it is watered with abun-
fontaine *bois* *elle* *aroſer* 129
dance of rivulets, and wants not the diverſions of hunt-
ruiſſeau *manquer* 129 *plaiſir*
ing. I will abuſe your patience no longer. Did you
chaſſe f *abuſer* 129 *davantage*
think of my buſineſs? has he perceived your trick?
penſer 130 *affaire* *être ſ'apercevoir* 129 *tour*
Reſiſt the wicked. He will not obey his maſter.
réſiſter 130 *méchans* *obéir*.

CHAPTER XIV.

OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

This mood comprehends the *preſent*, the *gerund*, and the *participle*. Theſe three tenſes will be explained ſeparately, and demand a particular attention.

RULE 134.—*Infinitive without Prepoſition.*

☞ 1. A verb in the preſent of the infinitive has no prepoſition before it, when it comes after any of the following, aller, croire, daigner, déclarer, devoir, entendre, envoyer, eſpérer, faire, laiſſer, nier, ôser, paroître, prétendre, pouvoir, ſavoir, ſouhaiter, voir and vouloir; example;

Deign to anſwer me. You ought to write to him.
daignez * *me repondre* *vous devriez* *lui écrire*

2. A verb is alſo put in the preſent of the infinitive without any prepoſition, when it is the ſubject or the nominative caſe of another verb; example;

To ſpeak too much is dangerous. To walk, is wholeſome.
* *trop parler* *eſt dangéreux* * *ſe promener, eſt ſalutaire.*

1. Should you be as rich as Crœſus, if you do not
quand *ſeriez* *que*
know how to put bounds to your deſires, you will al-
ſavoir * *mettre* 7 *déſir*
ways be poor.—2. To keep acquaintance with vicious
172 *vivre familèrement* *vicieux*
people, is to authoriſe vice.
* *c'eſt*

1. A wiſe man deſires nothing, but what he can
le ſage *déſirer* 118 *que* 74 *pouvoir*
get juſtly, *uſe* with ſobriety, and *diſtribute* cheerfully.—
gagner *avec ſobriété* *avec joie*
1. Nero cauſed the chriſtians to be *accuſed* of ſetting
faire *chrétiens* * *accuſer d'avoir mis*
Rome on fire, which he had done himſelf.—2. To *mourn*
à *le feu* *ce qu'il* *avoit* *lui-même* *pleurer*
without meaſure, is folly, not to *mourn* at all is inſenſi-
ſans *méſure* *folie* *ne pas* *du tout c'eſt inſenſi-*
bility.—1. Men ought to *ſhun* vice and ſtick to vir-
bilité *devoir* *éviter* *pratiquer*
tue. Thoſe who pretend to be learned, are often very
77 *prétendre*
ignorant. I will go and *ſee* him to-morrow, if I have time.
* *le* 57 *demain* *le tems*

RULE 135.—*Infinitive with* de.

☞ 1. We put in French the prepoſition *de* before a verb in the infinitive, when it comes 1. after a ſubſtantive; example;
It is time *to* go to bed. He has reaſon *to* complain.
il eſt tems de *ſe coucher* *il a ſujet* de *ſe plaindre*

2. After the verb *être* and any other adjectives than thoſe mentioned in the next rule; example;
It is glorious *to* forgive ones greateſt enemies.
il eſt glorieux de *pardonner à ſes plus grands ennemis*

3. After moſt of the reflected verbs; example;
I will abſtain *from* doing it. He repents *to* have ſaid it.
Je m'abſtiendrai de *le faire* *il ſe repent* de *l'avoir dit*

4. After the following verbs, accuſer, affecter, blâmer, ceſſer, commander, conjurer, conſeiller, craindre, détourner, defendre, différer, dire, diſpenſer, diſſuader, écrire, empêcher, enjoindre, entreprendre, eſſayer, feindre, finir, menacer, mériter, negliger, offrir, mettre, ordonner, oublier, parler, perſuader, plaindre, preſſer, preſcrire, prier, promettre, propoſer, refuſer, remercier, réſoudre, ſupplier, and tâcher; example;
Je vous conſeille de *reſter ici.*
I adviſe you *to* ſtay here.

1. Reading is a method of *conferring* with men, who
lecture f *manière* f *conférer avec*
in every age have been the moſt diſtinguiſhed for their
tous les ſiécles *diſtingués*
learning; of *becoming* acquainted with the reſult of their
ſcience *connoître* * *réſultat*

mature reflections, and of contemplating at leiſure the
mûres *contempler* *à loiſir*
finiſhed productions of good authors.—4. The law of na-
meilleur *auteurs* *loi* f
ture forbids us to do injuſtice to one another.—4. God
défendre *ſe faire* *tort* 114
commands us to love our enemies, and to do them good.
commander 57 *aimer* *ennemi* *faire leur* 57 *bien* 7
4. They deſerve to be encouraged who undertake to ſerve
78 *mériter* *entreprendre* *ſervir*
the public.

4. Never promiſe to do a thing when it is not in your
promettre *choſe quand*
power 1 to do it.—1. Cenſure is a tax which a man pays
pouvoir *taxe* f *payer*
to the public for being eminent, it is a folly to think of
être *c'eſt* *folie* f *penſer à*
eſcaping it, and a weakneſs to be affected with it.—3. I
échaper *foibleſſe* f *affecter en* 57
propoſe to go and ſee your mother to-night.
ſe propoſer * *voir* *mère* *ce ſoir*

RULE 136.—*Infinitive with* à.

☞ 1. A verb, in the preſent of the infinitive, takes the preposition *à*; firſt, moſt commonly after the adjectives adroit, affreux, agréable, aiſe, ardent, aſſidu, beau, bon, charmant, curieux, diligent, diſposé, déſagréable, enclin, exact, facile, lent, porté, prêt, prompt, propre, ſujet, and after all thoſe which denote inclination or fitneſs; example;

I am ready *to* go out. This fruit is good *to* eat.
Je ſuis prêt à partir. *Ce fruit eſt bon* à *manger*

2. After the verbs, accoûtumer, admettre, aider, aimer, amuſer, apporter, apprendre, apprêter, aſtreindre, authoriſer, borner, chercher, commencer, condamner, conſiſter, contribuer, dépenſer, deſtiner, diſpoſer, donner, employer, encourager, engager, enſeigner, exercer, exciter, exhorter, héſiter, inviter, montrer, perſiſter, porter, préparer, préſenter, réduire, renoncer, réuſſir, ſervir, ſonger, ſoumettre, tendre, viſer, and ſome others mentioned in the liſt of verbs at the end of the grammar, govern the next verb in the infinitive with *à*; ex.

I learn *to* dance. He likes *to* play at cards.
J'apprends à *danſer* *il aime* à *jouer aux cartes*

3. After the verb *avoir*, when it ſignifies a thing to be done; example;

I have a houſe *to* ſell or *to* lett.
J'ai une maiſon à *vendre ou* à *louer*

1. Charity is ready to ſacrifice her own intereſts to thoſe
f *prête* *ſacrifier* *propre intérêt* 76
of her neighbours.—2. True wiſdom conſiſts in knowing
voiſin *vrai ſageſſe* f *conſiſter* *connoître*
ones duty exactly, true eloquence in ſpeaking of it
ſon devoir exactement f *en* 57
clearly, and true piety in doing what we know to be
clairement *piété* *faire* 74 *ſavoir (ir)*
good.—2. Love to help the unfortunate, and to com-
bien *aimez* *ſoulager* *malheureux* *con-*
fort the afflicted.—2. A good education teaches us to
ſoler *affligés* *apprendre* 57
behave well to every body.
ſe conduire *envers*

2. The latter part of a wiſe man's life is taken up
dernier partie f 23 *employer*
in curing the falſe opinions and prejudices which had
ſe défaire *des fauſſe* f *des préjugé*
been contracted in the former.—1. Is the French eaſy to
contracter *premier* 92 *facile*
learn?——1. Is that queſtion difficult to reſolve?—1. Let
apprendre f 92 *difficile* *réſoudre*
a prince be ſlow to puniſh, and quick to reward.—3. I
lent *punir* *prompt* *récompenſer*
have no money to lend.—3. He has a farm to lett or ſell
18 *argent* *prêter* *ferme* f *louer*

RULE 137.—*Infinitive with* de *or* à *.

1. *Manquer* governs the infinitive with *à* when it is affirmatively uſed, and with *de* when negatively; example;
The unfortunates never fail *to* complain.
les malheureux ne manquent jamais de *ſe plaindre*
I have failed *to* do what I had promiſed you.
J'ai manqué à *faire ce que je vous avois promis*

2. *Tarder* governs the infinitive with *à* when it ſignifies *to delay*, and with *de* when it ſignifies *to long*; example;
He is long before he comes. I long to ſee him.
Il tarde bien à *venir* *il me tarde* de *le voir*

3. *Venir* governs the infinitive mood without prepoſition, when it ſignifies *to come*; as, *venez me voir*, come and ſee me; with *de*, when it ſignifies a thing juſt done; as, *il vient*

* *The following*, commencer, continuer, contraindre, forcer, *and* obliger, *govern the infinitive with* de, *or* à, *according as it ſounds beſt.*

de *partir*, he is juſt gone out; and with *à*, when it ſignifies *to happen*; as, *s'il vient à pleuvoir vous ſerez mouillé*, if it happens to rain you will be wet.

1. I will not fail to puniſh you, if you neglect to do
manquer punir 57 *manquer*
your exerciſe.—2. I long to ſee your mother; ſhe de-
thême il me tarde voir tar-
lays long before ſhe comes.—3. Come and ſee us to-
*der long-tems à * venir venir * 57*
morrow. Is your father at home?—3. No, he is juſt gone
92 *père venir partir*
out. As religion obliges us to love princes, ſo princes
f *obliger* 57 *aimer ainſi*
are obliged to protect religion.
protéger

RULE 138.—*Infinitive with* pour.

☞ We uſe the prepoſition *pour* before the preſent of the infinitive, when we want to expreſs the end, the deſign, or the cauſe for which a thing is done, and in general every time that the prepoſition *to* can be changed into *in order*, without altering the ſenſe; example;

Je ſuis venu pour *vous voir.*
I am come *to* ſee you.
Je ferai tout pour *vous obliger.*
I will do every thing *to* oblige you *.

He who tells a lie is not ſenſible how great a taſk,
77 *mentir ne ſait pas quelle * * tâche* f
he undertakes, for he may be forced to invent
entreprendre (ir) pouvoir (ir) forcer à inventer
twenty more *to* maintain that one. It is neceſſary to
maintenir le premier il eſt 135
know the human heart *to* judge well of others. God
connoître 31 *cœur* m *juger autres Dieu*
has not given us a heart *to* hate one another. He who
donner 57 *nous haïr* 114 77
has good eſtate, and makes uſe of it *to* promote the
fortune f *uſage en* 57 *procurer*
glory of God, and *to* help thoſe who are in need, is
gloire f *ſoulager* 77 *beſoin*
beloved by every body. Palamedes invented the game of
aimer de 14 *inventa jeu* m

* Pour *is alſo uſed after the words* aſſez, trop, ſuffiſant, *and the verb* ſuffire.

cheſs, *to* ſerve for diverſion to his ſoldiers, and *to*
échets *ſervir* *d'amuſement* *ſoldat*
teach them the ſtratagems of war.
apprendre *leur* 57 *ſtratagême* *guerre* f

RULE 139.—*Infinitive with* ſans.

The Engliſh gerund, preceded by the prepoſition *without*, is rendered in French by the preſent of the infinitive with *ſans*; example;

Vous ne pouvez y aller, ſans *déſobéir à votre père.*
You cannot go there, *without* diſobeying your father.

Nobody can be happy *without* practiſing virtue.
116 *pouvoir (ir)* *pratiquer* f
We ſhould never undertake any thing *without* having
devoir 120 *entreprendre* *rien*
conſulted the will of God, and implored his divine aſſiſt-
conſulter *volonté* f *implorer* 31 *aſſiſt-*
ance. The evils naturally incident to human life are
ance *mal* m 172 *qui arrivent* *humain* f
numerous enough *without* being multiplied by thoſe of choice.
nombreux *aſſez* *multiplier* 76 *choix* m

The eagle has a very piercing eye; he looks at the
aigle *perçant* *œil* *regarder*
ſun without caſting down his eye-lids. If Titus paſſed
ſoleil *baiſſer* *paupière* *paſſer*
one day without doing good to any body, he uſed
de bien *quelqu'un* *avoit coutûme*
to ſay, I have loſt that day.
perdu

N.B. We never put a gerund in French after any other prepoſition than *en*. Thus we put the preſent of the infinitive after the prepoſitions *de*, *à*, *pour*, *avec*, *après*, *ſans*, &c.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the INFINITIVE with de, à, pour *or* ſans.

Youth cannot forbear gaming. All men are li-
les jeunes gens 134 *s'empêcher* 135 *jouer* *ſu-*
able to miſtake. Men are born to labour as
jet 136 *ſe tromper* *naître (ir)* 138 *travailler*
birds to fly. There are perſons whom we hate, others
oiſeau 138 *voler* *il y a* *perſonne* 7 *que* *haïr d'autres*

whom we love, without knowing why; the one is an injuf-
aimer 139 *ſavoir* *l'un*
tice, the other a weakneſs. The deſire of deſerving the
f *autre* *foibleſſe* f *déſir* 135 *mériter*
praiſes which are given us, ſtrengthens our virtue. Giddy
louange *donner* 57 *fortifier* *legers* 31
minds begin many things without ever finiſhing any.
eſprits *pluſieurs* 139 *en finir*

There are divers ſorts of curioſity, the one of inter-
il y a *ſorte* f 16 *curioſités* *inté-*
eſt, which incites us to deſire to learn what can
rêt *porter* 136 *déſirer d' apprendre* 74 *pouvoir*
be uſeful to us, the other of pride, which proceeds from
utile 57 *orgueil* *venir*
the deſire of knowing what others are ignorant of. The
déſir 135 *ſavoir* 74 *autres* *ignorent* *
greateſt wiſdom of a man conſiſts in knowing his own
ſageſſe f *conſiſter* 136 *connoître*
follies, and in taking meaſures to make amends for
folie *prendre des mésure* 138 *réparer* *
them.
les 57

Life is given us to glorify God, and to ſave our
f *donner* 138 *glorifier* 138 *ſauver*
ſouls by good actions. Young men are generally more
âme 8 f *les jeunes gens* *
fond of hearing ſtrange things, than ready to
aimer 136 *entendre étrange* 7 *qu'ils ne ſont prompts* 136
believe them Death is an eternal decree, to which all
croire 57 *mort* f *éternel* 31 *décret* m 81
men ought to ſubmit. Men often think of death when
devoir 134 *ſe ſoumettre* *penſer* 130 *mort* f
it is too late; and begin to ſtudy how to live,
trop tard *commencer à apprendre* * 136 *vivre*,
when they ſhould learn how to die.
quand *devoir apprendre* * 136 *mourir*

People are often afraid of ſeeing themſelves ſuch as
on *craindre* 135 *voir* *ſe* 57 *tel qu'*
they are, becauſe they are not what they ſhould be. No-
on *parcequ' on* 74 *on devoir*
body is able to write well, who has not learnt to
116 *pouvoir* 134 *écrire* *apprendre* 136
think well, to arrange his thoughts methodically, and to
penſer 136 *arranger* *pensée avec méthode* 136
expreſs them with propriety. To be a chriſtian, is to
exprimer les 57 *propriété* 134 * *chrétien, c'eſt* *

follow the precepts delivered by Jeſus Chriſt, to love what
ſuivre *précepte* * *aimer* 74
he loved, and to deſpiſe what he deſpiſed.
aimoit * *mépriſer* 74

OF THE GERUND.

RULE 140.—*Gerund indeclinable.*

☞ 1. When a word ending in *ing* precedes the ſubſtantive in Engliſh, it goes after in French, and is always declinable like an adjective; example;

A convincing proof. Charming girls.
une preuve *convainquante* des filles *charmantes*

2. When a word ending in *ing* goes after the ſubſtantive in Engliſh, it is a gerund, and indeclinable in French; ex.

A proof convincing every body.
une preuve *convainquant* tout le monde—not convainquante

This diſtinction is an invariable rule by which one may eaſily diſtinguiſh when a gerund is declinable or indeclinable. It qualifies in the firſt caſe as an adjective; and in the ſecond it denotes an action as a verb.

1. The load-ſtone has *ſurpriſing* effects.—1. Your ſiſter
aimant *ſurprénant effet* 7
is a *charming* girl.—2. The ſoldiers of Alexander *forgetting*
charmant *ſoldat* *Alexandre oublier*
their wives and children, looked upon the Perſian gold as
femme *enfans* *regarder* * *or*
their plunder.—1. *Lowing* oxen, and *bleating* ſheep,
butin *mugiſſant bœufs* *bélant brebis* pl f
came in crowds, they could not find ſtables enough to
foule *on ne pouvoit trouver aſſez d'étables* 138
be ſheltered in.
les mettre à couvert.

2. The Aſiatics *remembering* the dignity of Berenice, and
ſe reſſouvenir 129 *dignité* f
pitying her hard fortune, ſent her aid.—1. As
avoir pitié 129 *mauvais* f *envoyer lui sécour* 7 *comme*
on the margin of a brook, a zephyr, with a *cooling* breeze,
bord *ruiſſeau* m
revives the *languiſhing* flocks, which the burning heat of
ranimer *languiſſant troupeau* *brûlant chaleur* f

the ſummer conſumes, ſo this ſpeech allayed the God-
été conſumer ainſi diſcour diminuer dé-
deſs's deſpair.
eſſe 17 *déſeſpoir*

RULE 141.—*Indicative uſed inſtead of the Gerund.*

When an Engliſh gerund is not in the nominative caſe, it muſt be rendered in French by the preſent or the imperfect of the indicative mood, with the relative pronoun *qui* before it; example;

Je l'ai vu qui jouoit *dans le jardin.*
I have ſeen him *playing* in the garden
not, *je l'ai vu jouant*

Clouds and fogs are formed from the vapours *ariſing*
nuage brouillard former vapeur s'élever
from the earth. Variety of colours depends on the po-
terre f 9 *couleur dependre de*
ſition and order of the objects *diverſifying* the light in
f *ordre objet diverſifier lumière* f
the reflection of their rays. Alexander, near his death,
f *rayon* 14 *près de mort* f
aſked his friends *ſtanding* about him, if they thought they
150 *à ſes ſe tenir auprès de croire (ir)*
could find a king like him. Men act more fre-
pouvoir (ir) comme agir ſou-
quently from motives *ariſing* from preſent circumſtances,
vent par motif 7 *venir circonſtance* f
than from future.

RULE 142.—by *expreſſed by* en.

☞ The prepoſition *by*, which comes in Engliſh before a gerund, is always expreſſed in French by *en* with the gerund, and never by *par*; example;

Nous avons obtenu la paix en *faiſant de grands ſacrifices.*
We have obtained peace *by* making great ſacrifices
not, par faiſant *de grands ſacrifices*

By taking revenge, a man is but equal with his enemy,
ſe venger 128 *égal à ennemi*
by paſſing it over, he is his ſuperior. You may eaſily
pardonner lui * *ſupérieur.*
get praiſe, *by* complying with the wiſhes of the people
obtenir louange vous conformer aux déſir perſonne
you converſe with, and *by* preferring others before yourſelf.
converſer préférer à

If you have raſhly engaged to do a thing which ought
être imprudemment s'engager à choſe f *devoir*
not to be done, do not make bad worſe *by* perſiſting
faire * *rendre le mal plus grand perſiſter* 136
to do it. The grace of God works upon us, *by* ſuggeſting
la 57 *grace* f *opérer* *ſuggérer*
good thoughts and keeping off bad ones.
penſée 8 f *éloigner* * *les mauvaiſes.*

OF THE PARTICIPLE.

RULE 143.—*Caſes where the Participle is declinable.*

☞ 1. A participle is always declinable in French as an adjective, when it comes after a ſubſtantive which it qualifies; example;

A book well *written.* A letter well *written.*
Un livre bien écrit. *Une lettre bien* écrite.

2. When it comes after any tenſe of the verb *être* or *paroître*, few caſes excepted; example;

My brother is *eſteemed.* My ſiſter is *eſteemed.*
Mon frère eſt eſtimé *ma ſœur eſt* eſtimée.
He appears *afflicted.* She appears *afflicted.*
Il paroit affligé *elle paroit* affligée.

3. When it comes after the verb *avoir*, if the noun or pronoun antecedent anſwer to the queſtion *whom* or *what*, and could be put immediately after the participle, in giving the ſentence another turn; example;

The woman I have *ſeen* is very handſome.
La femme que j'ai vue *eſt très belle.*
The rules which I have *learnt* are eaſy.
Les regles que j'ai appriſes *ſont faciles.*

The participle *vue* agrees with *femme*, and *appriſes* with *regles*; becauſe if you aſk me, whom I have ſeen? my anſwer will be *a handſome woman*; what I have learnt?—*eaſy rules.*

2. He is *arrived* from France, ſhe is *arrived* from Spain.
arriver *elle arriver Eſpagne*
1. A noble, but confuſed thought, is a diamond covered
confus penſée f *diamant couvrir*
with duſt.—1. The alms *given* without oſtentation
de pouſſière *aumône* f

acquire a new merit.—2. Letters and writing have been
acquérir (ir) *mérite* m *écriture* f
invented to ſpeak to the eye.—2. The wicked are always
inventer 138 *œil* *méchans*
tormented by their own conſcience.—2. Virtuous people are
tourmenter *vertueux perſonnes*
eſteemed, and the impious deſpiſed.—3. The letter which
eſtimer *impie* *mépriſer* *lettre* f
I have *received* is long.—3. The faults he has *committed*
recevoir *longue* *faute* f *commettre (ir)*
are atrocious.—3. The houſe which I have bought, is new.
atroce *maiſon* f *acheter* *neuf*
—3. The horſes which you have *ſold* me are very good.—
cheval *vendre* 57
3. The women whom I have *ſeen* are young and
femme *voir (ir)*
handſome.

RULE 144.—*Caſes where the Participle is indeclinable.*

☞ 1. The participle is always indeclinable in French, when it is followed by a verb which governs the noun antecedent; which is the caſe when it cannot be put immediately after the participle, as in this example;

The houſe which I have *adviſed* you to buy is new.
La maiſon que je vous ai conſeillé *d'acheter eſt neuve.*

We cannot ſay *conſeiller une maiſon*, conſequently the word *maiſon* is governed by *acheter*, and the participle not having reference to it is indeclinable.

2. The participle is alſo indeclinable when it governs a noun after it, or when it is not preceded by the word *que*; example;

I have *ſeen* a handſome woman. I have learnt a rule.
J'ai vu *une belle femme.* *J'ai* appris *une regle.*
not, *j'ai vue une belle femme*; nor, *j'ai apriſe une regle.*

Theſe two rules, if well underſtood, will remove one of the greateſt difficulties of the French language.

1. I muſt finiſh the letter which I have *begun* to
il faut que 157 *lettre* f *commencer*
write.—1. The rules which I had *adviſed* you to learn
conſeiller 135 *apprendre*
are uſeful.—How many men commit the ſame faults
utile *que d'hommes* *commettre (ir)* *faute*
which they had *reſolved* to avoid.
réſoudre (ir) *d'éviter*

2. Happy the princes who have always *uſed* their power
heureux *employer* *pouvoir*
for the good of their people.—2. Demetrius being informed
bien *peuple* *informer*
that the Athenians had *overthrown* his ſtatues; they have
renverſer *ſtatue*
not, replied he, *overthrown* the valour which erected
répliqua-t-il *valeur* f *ériger*
them to me.
58 *me.*

2. Your ſiſters have *made* great progreſs in French.—
faire 8 *progrès*
2. We have *dined* to day ſooner than uſual.—2. I have
diner *plutôt* *ordinaire*
written a letter to my father.—2. We have *played* much
écrire *jouer*
to-day.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the GERUNDS and PARTICIPLES.

Philip ſent deputies to the Scythians deſiring a
envoyer *député* 7 *Scythe* *pour demander*
part of the expences of the ſiege; the Scythians blaming
partie f *frais* m *blâmer* 140
the barrenneſs of their land, replied, that having no riches
ſterilité *terre* *repondre* *richeſſe* f
ſufficient to ſatisfy ſo great a king, they thought it
ſuffiſante 138 *ſatisfaire* *roi* *croire (ir)*
more unfit to pay but a part, than to refuſe the
mal *de payer* 128 *partie* f 40 *réfuſer* *le*
whole. Groveling geniuſes never reach to the ſublime.
tout *rampant* 140 *genie* m 120 *s'élever* m
This actor performs with a charming taſte and dignity.
acteur *repréſenter* *charmant* 140 *goût* *dignité* f
As a flower blowing in the morning ſweetly perfumes
fleur f *qui s'épanouir* *matin* 172 *parfumer*
the fields around the whole day, but fading towards the
champ *d'alentour* *jour* *ſe flétrir* *vers*
evening, loſes its lively colour, languiſhes, and drops his
ſoir *perdre* *vif* 31 *couleur* f *languir* *pancher*
beautiful head; ſo was the ſon of Ulyſſes, brought to the
beau *tête* f *ainſi* *fils* *arrivé*
gates of death.
porte *mort* f

All will reſpect the magiſtrates who, forgetting their
tout le monde reſpecter magiſtrat 140 *oublier*
own intereſt, obſerving the law, favouring virtue, and
obſerver loi f *favoriſer vertu* f
reſtraining vice, ſeek the welfare of their country. The
reſtreindre m *chercher bien* m *pays*
fleet deſtined to the ſiege of Troy was compoſed of 1300
flotte f *deſtiner* 143 m *Troïe compoſer* 143
ſhips. The Cardinal Richelieu repreſented to the king the
vaiſſeau repréſenter roi
great pains he had taken, and the ſervices he had
peine f 143 *prendre (ir)* m 143
done to the ſtate. The books which I have bought are
rendre état livre m 143 *acheter*
well bound. The watch which I have ſold, is a new
rélier montre f 143 *vendre* * *neuf*
one. Greater honour is acquired by defending than by
* *honneur on acquiére* 142 *defendre*
accuſing others.
accuſer.

OF THE CONCORD OF VERBS.

RULE 145.—*The Verb agrees with its Nominative Caſe.*

All the perſonal verbs agree in French with their nominative caſe in number and perſon; example;

Je parle, tu parles, il parle, &c.
I ſpeak, thou ſpeakeſt, he ſpeaks.

All ſubſtantives are of the third perſon; thus a verb muſt always be put in the third perſon ſingular or plural, when it has a ſubſtantive for its nominative caſe; example;

The maſter teaches. The ſcholars ſtudy.
Le maître enſeigne—ſingular. *Les écoliers étudient*—plural

A verb is always put in the third perſon plural, when it has two or more ſubſtantives for its nominative caſe, though they ſhould be both in the ſingular; example;

Démoſtène et Cicéron étoient *deux grands orateurs.*
Demoſthenes and Cicero *were* two great orators.

RULE 146.—*The Verb agrees with the moſt worthy Perſon.*

If the nominatives are of different perſons, the verb agrees with the moſt worthy *, and is preceded by one of theſe two pronouns, *nous* or *vous*; example;

* *The firſt perſon is more worthy than the ſecond, and the ſecond is more worthy than the third.*

Mon frère et moi nous *y irons.*
My brother and I ſhall go thither.
Vous et lui vous *parliez de nous.*
You and he were ſpeaking of us.

as if it was, my brother and I *we* ſhall go there; and ſo on for others.

I read the bible. Thou ſpeakeſt too faſt. He writes
lire (ir) *bible* f *trop vîte* *écrire (ir)*
well. We are all mortal. You are young. They are
mortel *jeune*
happy. My brother and ſiſter will dance. You and I will
heureux *ſœur* *danſer*
play. You and they are of the ſame opinion. Virtue and
jouer *eux* f *vertu* f
vice have different conſequences. You or your father
effet 7 *père*
could lend me the two hundred pounds I want.
pouvoir (ir) *prêter* *cent* *livre dont j'ai beſoin*
You or your brother have taken my book.
prendre (ir) *livre* m

Lewis the fourteenth having ſaid to the earl of Gram-
Louis 11 *dit* *comte*
mont, I know your age, the biſhop of Senlis, who
ſavoir (ir) *évêque*
is eighty-four years of age, told me that you have
avoir
ſtudied in the ſame claſs; that biſhop, Sire, replied the earl,
étudier *répliquer* 150
does not ſpeak right, for neither he or I have ever ſtudied.
accuſer *juſte* *ni* 119 *lui*

RULE 147.—*The Verb agrees*, &c.

The relative pronoun *qui* is of every perſon: thus, the verb which comes after it, agrees in number and perſon with the noun or pronoun antecedent; example;

C'eſt nous qui l'avons *dit*—not, *c'eſt nous qui l'a dit.*

It was I *who* deſtroyed the fortifications of that city.
ce fut *détruire* *ville*
It was you who refuſed my requeſt. It is you, or your
ce fut *refuſer* *requête* f *c'eſt*
brother who have taken my book. It was you who
prendre (ir) *livre* *ce*
came laſt night. It is they who have done it, I am
venir hier au ſoir *ce ſont* *faire le* 57

ſure. It is I who have ſeen him; it is my brothers
ſûr *c'eſt* *voir (ir)* *le* *ce ſont* *frère*
who have diſcovered the plot. It will be you who
découvrir (ir) *complot* m
ſhall go there.
y aller

CHAPTER XV.

OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. This mood comprehends the preſent tenſe, the imperfect, the preterite, the future, and the conditional, with the ſame number of compound tenſes, of which as follows:

RULE 148.—*Uſe of the Preſent Tenſe.*

The preſent tenſe of the indicative mood is uſed in French to expreſs a thing preſent; example;
I ſee a man who ſleeps.
Je vois un homme qui dort.

2. A thing which we do habitually, though not in the moment in which we ſpeak; example;
I walk every day.
Je me promène tous les jours.

3. A thing of eternal truth; example;
God is merciful.
Dieu eſt miſéricordieux.

4. A future not diſtant; example;
I go to night to the play.
Je vais ce ſoir à la comédie.

Hiſtory is the picture of times and men, and conſe-
hiſtoire *tableau* m *tems* 20 *conſé-*
quently the image of inconſtancy and caprice. The rain-
quemment *inconſtance* m *arc-*
bow is formed by the beams of the ſun reflected by
en-ciel *ſe forme* *rayon* *ſoleil* m *réfléchir* 143
drops of rain. I ſet out for France to-morrow, if it
goutte de pluie *partir* * 5 *demain*
is fine weather. I learn French, and my ſiſter
faire *tems* m *apprendre (ir)*
Italian. I go to night to the opera. God is merciful.
Italien *ce ſoir* *miſéricordieux.*

I ſet out to-morrow for Paris.
partir demain

RULE 149.—*Imperfect of the Indicative.*

☞ 1. The *imperfect* is uſed to expreſs the *inclinations, cuſtoms, manners, good* or *bad qualities* of nations, and alſo of perſons when they are dead; example;
Cæſar étoit *un grand général.*
Cæſar was a great general.

2. This tenſe is moreover uſed to expreſs an *Engliſh gerund* preceded by *was* or *were*; example;
Je dinois quand j'appris cette fâcheuſe nouvelle.
I was dining when I heard that ſad news.
not, *jétois dinant*, nor, *je dinai quand*, &c.

N. B. When the imperfect is uſed to expreſs a gerund preceded by *was* or *were*, it always denotes that the thing we are ſpeaking of was preſent in a time paſt ſpecified, and could be on that account called a preſent relative *.

1. Orpheus, according to the fable, *mixed* ſo agreeably
Orphée ſelon * f *mêler agréablement*
his voice with his lute, that he *ſtopped* the courſe of
voix f *lute* f *arrêter cour* m
rivers, *calmed* tempeſts, *attracted* the moſt ſavage beaſts,
rivière calmer tempête attirer ſauvage bête f
and *gave* motion to the trees and rocks.—2. I was writing
donner 7 *arbre rocher* 20 *écrire*
you a letter, when I was informed of your arrival.—2.
lettre f *je fus informer arrivée*
What were you doing this morning in my room when I
que faire ce matin chambre f
found you?—2. I was doing my exerciſe.
ai trouvé 57 *thême* m

---

* *The imperfect* (ſays Mr. Wailly) *is uſed when we ſpeak of actions habitual, or repeated in a time not ſpecified; and alſo to denote an action as preſent when another action was done.*

The imperfect (ſays Chambaux) *expreſſes the inclinations and qualifications; it alſo denotes that the thing we are ſpeaking of was preſent in a time ſpecified.*

The imperfect (ſays Perrin) *is uſed to denote an action reiterated ſeveral times, or habitual in a time not determined.—2. The cuſtoms, habits, good or bad qualities of dead creatures, or their age.*

1. Alfred *was* a great king, he *poſſeſſed* all the virtues of
roi *poſſéder* *vertu* f
a wiſe man, they *were* ſo temperate, that each *prevented*
ſage *ſi modérée* *l'une empêcher*
the other from exceeding its proper bounds; he knew how
ſortir de *borne* *ſavoir (ir)* *
to unite the moſt enterpriſing ſpirit with the cooleſt
concilier *entreprenant eſprit* m *plus grande*
moderation, and the moſt ſevere juſtice with the greateſt
f 31 *juſtice* f
lenity. The walls of Babylon were two hundred feet high
douceur f *mur* 36
and fifty broad.

RULE 150.—*Preterite of the Indicative.*

☞ The *preterite* of the indicative is uſed to expreſs a particular fact or event, happened but once or very ſeldom, in a time quite paſt, and at the diſtance at leaſt of a day; example;

My father *died* yeſterday. I *ſaw* the king laſt year.
Mon père mourut *hier*. *Je* vis *le roi l'année paſſée.*

not, *mon père mouroit hier*; nor, *je voyois le roi l'année paſſée.*

This tenſe is by ſome grammarians called the hiſtorical tenſe, becauſe it is chiefly uſed in hiſtorical relations.

Cæſar aſcended to the empire by very ſanguinary means.
parvenir *par* *voie*
Alexander, with forty thouſand men, attacked Darius
Alexandre *mille* *attaquer*
who had ſix hundred thouſand; he gave him battle
en 149 *cent* *livrer lui* 57 *bataille*
twice, defeated him, and made his mother, wife, and
deux fois defaire le 57 *faire* 63 *femme*
daughters priſoners. Cato killed himſelf leſt he ſhould
priſonnières *tuer* *ſe* 57 *depeur de* *
fall into the hands of Cæſar.
tomber *main.*

Hardly was Cæſar entered into the ſenate, but the
à peine *entrer* *ſénat* *que*
conſpirators threw themſelves upon him, and pierced him
conſpirateur *jeter* *ſe* 57 *lui* *percer* *le* 57
with blows. Marius was ill treated by fortune, however
de coup. *mal traiter* *fortune* f *cependant*
he did not loſe his courage.
perdre *

RULE 151.—*Future and conditional.*

1. The *future* is uſed to expreſs a time not yet come; example;

J'irai *bientôt en France.*
I ſhall ſoon go into France.

2. The conditional is uſed to expreſs a conditional ſentence; example;

Nous ſerions *heureux, ſi nous ſavions fixer nos déſirs.*
We ſhould be happy, if we knew how to fix our deſires.

3. The Engliſh often put the verb in the *preſent* after the conjunctions *when, as ſoon as,* or *after,* when they want to expreſs a thing not yet come; in ſuch caſes the *future* muſt be uſed in French; example;

Je jouerai auſſitôt que j'aurai *fini mon thême.*
I will play as ſoon as I have finiſhed my exerciſe.
not *auſſi-tôt que* j'ai *fini.*

3. As ſoon as my education *is* finiſhed, I will go into Italy,
auſſitôt que *finir* *aller en Italie,*
to viſit the Roman antiquities.—3. When you *are* ready, we
voir *romain* *antiquité* *quand* *prêt*
will go and take a walk.—1. The Lord ſaid unto Cain,
aller * *nous* * *promener* *Seigneur* *à*
who had killed his brother Abel, when thou tilleſt the
tuer *frère* *labourer*
ground, it ſhall not yield unto thee, a fugitive and vagabond
terre f *produire* *fugitif*
thou ſhalt be on the earth.
ſur *terre* f

1. There will always be wars among men, becauſe they
entre *parceque*
are ambitious.—2. I would have lent him fifty pounds if
ambitieux *prêter* *cinquante livre*
I had known he wanted them. 1. I hope you will not refuſe
ſavoir qu'il en avoit beſoin *eſpérer*
me the favour I beg of you.
faveur f 83 *demander* *

RULE 152.—No *future* nor *conditional* after *ſi.*

☞ 1. After the particle (*ſi* if) we uſe in French, the preſent of the indicative inſtead of the future, and the imperfect inſtead of the preterite or conditional uſed in Engliſh; example;

He will become a learned man, if he *will ſtudy*.
Il deviendra ſavant, *s'il étudie*.
not, s'il étudiera.

2. We uſe however, the future and conditional in French as in Engliſh, after the particle *ſi, if*, when it ſignifies *whether*; example;
I do not know if he *will come*, or if he *would come*.
Je ne ſais pas s'il viendra, *ou s'il* viendroit.

1. If your perſon was as gigantic as your deſires, the
perſonne gigantesque déſir tout
whole world would not contain you; your right hand would
monde contenir droit f
touch the eaſt, and your left the weſt at the ſame time,
orient gauche oueſt même tems
and if you ſhould conquer all mankind, you would
conquérir (ir) le monde
attempt to ſubdue nature. *(ſaid Curtius to Alexander.)*
ſoumettre Alexandre.

2. I do not know if my father would come, if you
ſavoir (ir) venir
were to invite him. 1. If I would ſell my horſe, I could
inviter le vendre cheval pouvoir (ir)
have forty pounds for it.—2. If you would ſtudy well, your
livre en 57 étudier
maſter would love you, and you would make great progreſs.
aimer faire progrès
—1. I ſhould become rich, if I would continue my trade.—
devenir riche continuer commerce m
2. I do not know if my brother will conſent to it.
ſavoir (ir) conſentir y

RULE 153.—*Compound of the Preſent.*

The *compound of the preſent* is uſed in French to expreſs a thing paſt in a time not yet elapſed; a time is not elapſed when the words *this* or *our* are, or could be prefixed to it; example;
J'ai appris ma leçon ce matin.
I learnt my leſſon this morning.
not, *j'appris*, nor *j'apprenois*.

I *breakfaſted* this morning at eight o'clock, and I *dined*
déjeûner matin huit heure diner
at three in the afternoon. When did you learn your
après midi quand avoir apprendre (ir)

leſſon? I *learnt* it after dinner. Why did you not *learn*
leçon *après* *pourquoi*
it before? becauſe I was ſick all the morning. Have
la *parceque* *malade* *matin*
you done your exerciſe? No, I have not done it yet,
faire *encore*
but I will do it to-night. Where did you *walk*
ce ſoir *où* *ſe promener* *
to-day? I have not walked, becauſe it was not good
aujourd'hui? je ne me ſuis pas *parceque* *faire*
weather.
tems m

RULE 154.—Other Compound Tenſes. *

1. The compound of the imperfect *(the pluſquam perfectum of the Latins)* is uſed to expreſs a thing happened before another which is alſo paſt; example;

I had done my taſk when ſhe came to ſee us.
J'avois *fait ma tâche, quand elle vint nous voir.*

2. The compound of the preterite is uſed in the ſame ſenſe as the preterite itſelf, to expreſs a thing entirely paſt, and after the conjunctions *quand, lorſque, dèſque, auſſitôt que, après que*, &c. example;

As ſoon as the king *had* ſpoken, every body obeyed.
Auſſitôt que le roi eut *parlé tout le monde obéit.*

2. Quebec, in Canada, *was* taken by the Engliſh
en *prendre (ir)* *Anglois*
under General Wolf; this brave officer *was* killed in the
ſous *officier* *tuer*
glorious conqueſt, on the 18th of September, 1759.—1. Da-
glorieux conquête f * *Septembre*
rius in his defeat being obliged to drink water full of
defaite f *obliger* *boire* 7 *pleine*
mud, aſſured his ſoldiers that he had never drank with
aſſurer 150 *ſoldat* *jamais*
more pleaſure.—1. The king had named an admiral when
plus 18 *plaiſir.* *nommer* *amiral*
he heard of you.—2. As ſoon as the parliament had voted
on lui parla *auſſitôt que* *parlement* *voter*
againſt the continuation of the war, the peace was made.
contre *guerre* f *paix* f

* *Remember that the reflected verbs are conjugated with the verb* être *in their compound tenſes.*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the TENSES of the INDICATIVE MOOD.

William the conqueror was one of the greateſt generals
Guillaume *conquérant* 149
of his age; in him were united activity, vigilance, and
ſiecle m *unir* *activité* 9 f
intrepidity: he was ſtrict in his diſcipline, and kept his
149 *ſtricte* f *tenir* 149
ſoldiers in perfect obedience, yet he preſerved their affection:
parfait *obéiſſance* *conſerver* 150
he was perfect maſter of the military art; his aſpect was
149 *militaire* 31 *aſpect* 149
noble, his conſtitution robuſt, and nobody but himſelf
f *robuſte* *perſonne* *que* *lui*
could bend his bow.
ne pouvoir (ir) *bender* *arc.*

Idomeneus, one of the braveſt kings of the Greeks, on
Idoménée 31 *roi* *Grec* *ſur*
the point of being ſhipwrecked, made a vow to ſacrifice
m *faire* *naufrage* 150 • *vœu* 135 *ſacrifier*
to Neptune the firſt object he ſhould meet on his arrival
14 *objet* m *rencontrer* *à* *arrivée*
in his country, ſhould he eſcape the preſent danger;
pays m *ſi* 152 *échaper* *au* 31 m
he was unhappy enough to meet with his own ſon,
150 *aſſez* *malheureux* 138 *rencontrer* *fils*
he killed him, and was for that action obliged to quit
150 *le* *pour* *de* *quitter*
his country.
pays

Cæſar and Cato had the ſame degree of glory, but in
14 *Caton* 149 *dégré* *gloire*
different ways, Cæſar was celebrated for his generoſity,
149 *célébre*
Cato for his great integrity; in the former, the miſerable
intégrité *premier*
found a ſanctuary, in the latter the guilty met
trouver 149 *ſanctuaire* m *dernier* *coupable* *trouver* 149
with certain deſtruction: Cæſar aimed at the ſovereign
• 31 f *aſpirer* 149
command, and deſired new wars to diſplay his
commandement m 149 *nouveau* *guerre* f 138 *déployer*
military talents; as for Cato, his only ſtudy was
31 m *quand* *à* *ſeul* *étude* f 149

moderation, a regular conduct, and a rigorous ſeverity;
f *régulier conduite* f *rigoureux* 31 f
he contended in bravery with the brave, in modeſty with
en bravoure *modeſtie*
the modeſt, and in integrity with the upright.
juſte

After Alexander had conquered Porus, not only
après que 154 *conquérir (ir)* *non ſeulement*
he ſpared his life, but allowed him to retain his
épargner 150 *vie* f *permettre (ir)* *lui* 57 *garder*
title of king, and enlarged his dominions. As ſoon as
titre m *roi* *aggrandir* 150 *domaine* *auſſitôt que*
the Iſraelites had paſſed the Red Sea, they forgot the
154 *paſſer* *Rouge* 31 *mer* f *oublier* 150
miracle that had ſaved them.
m *ſauver les* 57

CHAPTER XVI.

OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

RULE 155.—*Superlative and Indeterminate Pronouns govern the Subjunctive.*

☞ 1. The ſuperlative governs the next verb in the ſubjunctive, when it is preceded by *qui* or *que*; example;
He is the moſt learned man I know in London.
Il eſt le plus ſavant que je connoiſſe *à Londres*

2. The indeterminate pronouns *quelque* whatever, *qui que ce ſoit* whoſoever, *aucun* none, *pas un* not one, *perſonne* nobody, *rien* nothing, govern the next verb in the ſubjunctive; example;
There is nobody who do it more eaſily than they.
Il n'y a perſonne qui le faſſe *plus aiſément qu'eux*

3. The words *l'unique*, *le ſeul*, the only one, *jamais* never, and alſo the ordinal numbers *le premier* the firſt, *le ſecond* the ſecond, *le troiſième* the third, &c. govern the next verb in the ſubjunctive; example;
I could never have thought they would have done it.
Je n'aurois jamais penſé qu'ils l'euſſent *fait*

2, Homer, who invented the fables of gods and demi-
inventer 150 *dieu*

gods, is the moſt agreeable lyar that ever *was*. The
dieu *menteur* *jamais*
moſt juſt compariſon that *can* be made of love
comparaiſon f *pouvoir (ir)* *faire* *amour*
is that of a fever; we have no *more* power over the one,
76 *fièvre* f 18 *pouvoir*
than upon the other, on account of its violence and du-
à raiſon 83 f *du-*
ration.
rée f

2. There is no man but *would be* very ſorry, if he
il n'y a perſonne 128 *fâché*
knew all that is thought of him, whatever merit
ſavoir (ir) *ce qu'on penſer* *quelque mérite*
he *has*. However ingenious the Greeks and Romans *were*,
quelque ingénieux que *Grec* *Romain*
yet they neither found the art of printing books, nor of
trouver *imprimer* 7 *ni*
engraving prints.
graver eſtampe

3. You are the firſt perſon I *have* ſeen to-day.
première *voir (ir)* *aujourd'hui.*
3. Lucretius and Pliny are the only natural philoſophers
Lucrece *ſeul naturel* 31 *philoſophe*
which the Romans *had*.
Romain

RULE 156.—*Verbs which always govern the Subjunctive Mood.*

A verb preceded by *qui* or *que*, is put in the ſubjunctive after the verbs which expreſs any doubt, wiſh, command, order, fear, ignorance, or any affection of the mind; and particularly after the following, appréhender, avoir peur, craindre, défendre, déſirer, douter, être bien aiſe, être content, être fâché, être ſurpris, ignorer, nier, ordonner, prier, ſe réjouir, ſouhaiter, and vouloir; example;

Je veux qu'on m'obéiſſe. *Je doute qu'il vienne.*
I will be obeyed. I doubt whether he will come.

Who doubts but riches *are* placed in virtue? The
douter *que richeſſe ne* *dans* f
Ægyptians did not doubt that certain plants and animals
Egyptien *plante* f
were divinities. In the mean time Eucharis ſaid to Te-
ne *divinité* 7 *au* *tems* 150 *Té-*

lemachus, in a jeering tone, are you not afraid that
lémaque *moquer* 31 *ton* *craindre*
Menton will *chide* you for coming a hunting without
ne gronder 57 *venir* *à la chaſſe* *ſans*
him? Almoſt all the eaſt ordered divine honours to be
preſque *orient* *honneur* m
rendered, and temples to be built for Jaſon; but many
rendre *bâtir* *à* *mais*
years after, Parmenio ordered them to be pulled down,
Parménion *faire* *les* * *abattre*
leſt the name of any one *ſhould* be greater than that
depeur que 158 *nom* *ne* 76
of Alexander.
Alexandre

RULE 157.—*Imperſonal Verbs which govern the Subjunctive.*

A verb preceded by *qui* or *que* is always put in the ſubjunctive after the imperſonals, *il faut*, *il eſt juſte*, *il eſt injuſte*, *il eſt fâcheux*, *il importe*, and in general after all the imperſonal verbs, not mentioned in rule 160; example;

Il faut que vous le faſſiez.
You muſt do it.

It is an unjuſt thing, that thoſe who deſerve well of their
* *injuſte* * *mériter*
country *are* not rewarded. It concerns the public that the
pays *récompenſer* *importe au*
wicked be puniſhed. There is no ſtate which *cannot*
méchans *punir* 169 *état* *pouvoir (ir)*
be utterly overthrown by civil wars. It is enough that
détruire *guerre* f
we do not *neglect* any thing that can contribute to
negliger *pouvoir (ir)* *contribuer*
the ſucceſs of an undertaking; diſappointment ought not
ſuccès *entrepriſe* f *devoir*
to leſſen the merit of it. If you are deſirous of being
diminuer *mérite* *en* 57 *vouloir (ir)*
eſteemed, you muſt *be* obliging, polite and affable to every
eſtimer *il faut que* *poli*
body.

RULE 158.—*Conjunctions which govern the Subjunctive.*

A verb is always put in the ſubjunctive after the following conjunctions, afinque, amoins que, avant que, bien que, de crainte que, de peur que, en cas que, encore que, juſqu'à ce que, loinque, malgré que, non obſtant que, non que, non

pás que, posé que, pourvu que, pour que, quoique, ſans que, ſoit que, and ſuppoſé que; example;

Je ſerai prêt avant qu'ils *ſoient* venus.
I will be ready *before* they *are* come *.

Keep a ſtrict watch over all your ſenſes, leſt
veillez ſur ſens m *de peur que*
intemperance *get* the maſter of you, and leſt your ſenſes *be*
maîtriſer vous ſens
the inſtruments of polluting your ſoul. Although Antio-
ſouiller âme quoique
chus *approved* of Hannibal's advice, yet he would
approuver * 17 *avis vouloir (ir)*
not act according to his counſel, leſt the victory
agir ſelon * *conſeil de peur que victoire* f
ſhould be Hannibal's, not his own.
être à et non pas à lui

We deſpiſe the world when we know it thoroughly,
mépriſer monde m *connoître parfaitement*
but we give ourſelves to it before we know it, and the
livrer nous y 58 *avant que le*
heart is loſt, before reaſon *has* enlightened it. You
cœur m *perdre avant que raiſon* f *éclairer le* 57
will learn very well, provided you *take* pains; I
apprendre pourvu que prendre peine
will ſtudy ſo much, that I hope I ſhall ſpeak French
étudier tant eſpérer François
before it *is* long, though I *am* convinced that
long tems quoique convaincre (ir)
it is a difficult language.
difficile langue f

VERBS and CONJUNCTIONS which govern ſometimes the INDICATIVE and ſometimes the SUBJUNCTIVE.

RULE 159.—*Verbs which govern the Subjunctive in one ſenſe, and the Indicative in another.*

☞ The following verbs, aſſurer, avouer, conclure, croire, déclarer, dire, eſpérer, juger, oublier, penſer, prédire, prévoir, promettre, ſoutenir, ſavoir, ſuppoſer, voir, and in general all

* Amoins que, de crainte que *and* de peur que, *require the particle* ne *before the next verb, as we have ſaid before, Rule* 127.

thoſe which expreſs belief or certainty, govern moſt commonly the ſubjunctive, when they are uſed interrogatively, negatively, or conditionally; but they govern the indicative in other circumſtances; example;

I think ſhe will do it, if ſhe can—affirmat.
Je crois qu'elle le fera, *ſi elle peut*—indic.
Croyez-vous qu'elle le faſſe—interrog. ſubj.
Je ne crois pas qu'elle le faſſe—negative ſubj.

I think my father will come; I do not think
croire (ir) *venir*
he will *come*, do you think he will come? I perceive
croire *s'apercevoir*
that you have deceived me. If I perceive you frequent
tromper *ſi* *fréquenter*
bad company, you will loſe my friendſhip. I hope
8 *compagnie* f *perdre* *amitié* *eſpérer*
they will make peace this year; do you hope they will
paix f *année*
make peace? Let us go, if you think it *will be* fine
faire *partir* *faire*
weather; I thought this morning it would be good wea-
tems *croire* *matin* *faire*
ther, but now I do not think it will be, becauſe it
mais à preſent
begins to rain.

RULE 160.—*Impersonal Verbs which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive.*

The impersonal verbs which denote evidence, certainty or probability, ſuch as, *il eſt clair, il eſt certain, il eſt probable, il eſt évident*, &c. govern the ſubjunctive when they are uſed in a negative, interrogative, or conditional manner, and the indicative, when they are not; example;

Il eſt certain qu'il *a* tort—indic. Il n'eſt pas certain qu'il *ait* tort—ſubj. Eſt-il certain qu'il *ait* tort—ſubj.

It is certain that he is in the wrong. It is not certain that he is in the wrong. Is it certain that, &c.

It is certain that unforeſeen evils *are* more grievous
imprévu *mal* *fâcheux*
than others. It is not certain that a man can be
autre *certain* *pouvoir (ir)*
happy in a deſert. It is evident that a nation cannot
heureux *déſert* *pouvoir (ir)*
be happy under a tyrannical government. It is not cer-
ſous *tyrannique gouvernement*

tain that a republic *is* the beſt government for a
république f *meilleur*
great nation. It is probable he will do it; is it pro-
nation f *faire eſt-il pro-*
bable ſhe will do it? It is not probable they will do it.
bable

RULE 161.—*Indicative and Subjunctive Mood.*

Theſe four conjunctions *de manière que, de ſorte que, tellement que, ſinon que*, govern the indicative, when the ſentence poſitively affirms that ſuch a thing is or will be; and the ſubjunctive, when the thing in queſtion is not certain, but rather wiſhed for; example;

I have nothing to tell you except that I do my duty.
Je n'ai rien à vous dire ſinon que je fais *mon devoir*—indic,
I aſk nothing except that you do your duty.
Je ne demande rien ſinon que vous faſſiez *votre devoir*—ſub.

Employ all the days of your youth, ſo that you
employez m *jeuneſſe de manière que*
may fulfil honourably in future all the duties of
remplir honorablement à l'avenir devoir
your ſtation in life. Your ſon conducts himſelf in ſuch
état vie f *fils conduire ſe* 57 *de* *
a manner that he gains the general eſteem. I aſk
manière gagner eſtime f *demander*
nothing from you, except that you *do* your taſk, and
rien 118 * *vous* 57 *ſinon que faire tâche* f
obey your maſter. I have nothing to tell you, except
obéir à maître rien à 57 *ſinon*
that I *have* done, and ſhall always do what religion com-
que faire et que toujours 74 f *com-*
mands to all chriſtians.
mander chrétien

RULE 162.—*Which Tenſe muſt be uſed.*

☞ A verb required to be in the ſubjunctive mood by any of the preceding rules, is uſually put in the *preſent*, when the firſt verb is in the preſent or future; it is put in the *preterite*, when the firſt verb is in any other tenſe; example;

I do not think they will write to-day.
Je ne crois pas qu'ils écrivent *aujourd'hui*—preſent ſubj.
I did not think they would write to your ſiſter.
Je ne croyois pas qu'ils écriviſſent *à votre ſœur*—preterite.

A man ought to ſupport himſelf ſo honourably, that no
devoir ſe 57 *ſi* 121

motives ſhould *be able* to induce him to an action un-
motif *pouvoir (ir)* *le* 57 *action* f.
worthy of his rank. The apoſtles received the gift of
digne *rang* *apôtre* *recevoir* *don*
tongues, that they *might* preach the goſpel
langue *afin que* *pouvoir (ir)* *prêcher* *évangile*
to all the nations of the earth. If you are aſſiduous
f *terre* f *aſſidu*
and *take* pains, you will ſucceed. Before I *form*
et que * *peine* *réuſſir* *avant que former*
any plan, I ſhall wait till things *have* a more tranquil
attendre que 31
appearance. David gave orders that his ſubjects *ſhould be*
apparence *ordonner* *qu'on* *ſujet* *faire le*
numbered, which excited the diſpleaſure of God. Do you
dénombrement ce qui *déplaiſir* m
think they will *do* it? Did you think they *would* do
croire (ir) 57
it? I did not think they would come to-day.

RULE 163.—*Caſes where the Preterite of the Subjunctive is uſed.*

The verb is always put in the *preterite* of the ſubjunctive, when it is followed by a third verb in the imperfect tenſe; though the firſt be in the preſent or future; example;

Je ne crois pas qu'ils fuſſent *venus, ſi je n'avois été les chercher*, I do not think they would have come, if I had not gone to fetch them.

It is not probable you *could have* obtained the con-
il n'eſt pas *avoir obtenir* *con-*
ſent of your father, if I had not ſpoken in your favour.
ſentement m *père* *ſi* *faveur*
I do not think that the French revolution would ever
croire (ir) 31 f
have happened, had Lewis the Sixteenth vigorouſly oppoſed
être arriver *Louïs* *ſeize* *oppoſer*
the firſt innovations. Do you think your brothers *would*
f *penſer*
have learnt French, if I had not taught them?
apprendre (ir) *les* 57

RULE 164.—*Compound Tenſes of the Subjunctive.*

A verb is uſually put in the compound of the preſent of the ſubjunctive in French, when the firſt verb is in the compound

* *When* que *is uſed to avoid the repetition of* ſi, *as in this caſe, it always governs the ſubjunctive.*

of the preſent, or of the future in Engliſh; it is put in the compound of the preterite, when the firſt verb is in any other compound tenſes; example; *je crains qu'ils ne* l'aient *dit*—preſent tenſe. *Je ne craignois pas qu'ils* l'euſſent *dit*—preterite. I fear they have ſaid it; I did not fear they had ſaid it.

I doubt whether any philoſopher *has* ever known the
douter *que* *philoſophe* *jamais*
origin of the winds. I wonder you *have* refuſed the
origine *vent* *être ſurpris*
employment that has been offered you. I never could
place f *offrir (ir)* 57 *pouvoir*
have thought that the Emperor *would have* ſubmitted
167 *penſer* *Empereur ſe être ſoumettre (ir)*
to ſo hard conditions. Garrick perhaps was the beſt tra-
ſi dur f 7 *peutêtre* 43 *tra-*
gic actor which the world *has* ever produced.
gique acteur *monde* m *produire*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the Uſe of the SUBJUNCTIVE.

There is no grief which length of time does not
169 *point chagrin* *longueur* f
leſſen. An ancient would ſet on fire the temple of
diminuer *vouloir mettre le feu au* m
Diana, that his name might be ſpread through the
Diane afin que 158 *nom ſe répandre par*
whole earth. Philoſophers are compoſed of fleſh and bones
terre f *compoſer chair os*
as well as other men; and however ſublimated their
auſſi bien que *quelque* 155 *élevée que*
theories may be, practical frailties are accidental to them,
theorie f *foibleſſe* *leur* 57
as well as to other mortals. The bark of trees was uſed
hommes *écorce* *arbre*
to write upon before paper was invented.
pour 158 *papier* *inventer*

The Emperor Caligula wiſhed that all the citizens of
empereur *déſirer* 156 *citoyens*
Rome had but one neck, that he might behead them
128 *col* m *afin que* 158 *décapiter les* 57
all at one blow. However exalted in riches we may
d'un coup *quelque* 155 *élevés* *richeſſe que*
be, and however unſucceſsful in literary productions, we
quelque malheureux *litteraire*

are never contented with our fortune, nor diſſatisfied with
120 *content* 32 *fortune* *mécontent* 32
our underſtanding. A man who has no friends, has no-
eſprit *point* 18 *ami* *per-*
body he may rely upon, nor from whom he may
ſonne 155 *compter ſur qui* *de qui* *pouvoir*
expect any favour.
attendre f

The love of our enemies muſt have no bounds in the
amour *ennemi ne doit* 121 *borne*
heart, though in the outward behaviour it may have
cœur m *quoique* 158 *extérieur conduite* f *il*
ſome limitation. Lightning appears before the thunder
7 *limites* *éclair* *paroître* 158 *tonnère* m
is heard. Unleſs a book be inſtructive or enter-
entendre *amoins que* 158 *ne* *inſtructif* f *amu-*
taining, I do not care to read it. Though ambition
ſant *ſe ſoucier* *le* 57 158
is a vice, it is nevertheleſs the foundation of many virtues.
m *néanmoins* *baſe* f

Though an honourable title may be conveyed to
quoique 158 *honorable* 31 *titre* m *ſe tranſmettre*
poſterity, yet the ennobling qualities, ſuch as the great-
f *qui* *annobliſſent* *qualités* *gran-*
neſs of the ſoul, cannot be transferred. Chriſtopher Co-
deur f *âme* *ſe tranſmettre* 13 *Co-*
lumbus, by an effort of genius and intrepidity, the moſt
lombe m *génie* 20 *intrépidité*
ſucceſsful that is recorded in the annals of mankind,
heureux 155 *rapporter* *annales du monde*
added to theſe kingdoms a new world.
ajouter 150 *royaume* *monde* m

CHAPTER XVII.

OF THE IRREGULAR, *would, could, ſhould*, &c.

RULE 165.—*would, could*, &c.

The words *will* or *would* are expreſſed in French by the verb *vouloir*, when they imply a command or an order. *Could* or *might* are expreſſed by *pouvoir*, when they denote poſſibility; and *ſhould* by *devoir*, when it denotes neceſſity or duty; ex.

Il *ne* veut *pas obéir à ſes ſupérieurs.*
He *will* not obey his ſuperiors *.

Why do you not ſpeak French?—Becauſe I *cannot*;
pourquoi *François parceque pouvoir (ir)*
if I *could*, I would. We are born for ſociety, we *ſhould*
nés f
therefore contribute to the advantage of the community.
c'eſt pourquoi contribuer *bien* *communauté*
If you *could* lend me your horſe, you would oblige me
prêter 57 *cheval* *obliger* 57
very much. I am ſorry I *cannot* to-day, if I *could*, I
beaucoup *fâché* *aujourd'hui*
certainly would not refuſe you; if you had aſked for it
certainement *réfuſer* *le* 57
yeſterday, you could have had it then, or if you *could*
bier *auriez pu l'avoir alors*
wait till to-morrow, it would be at your diſpoſal.
attendre juſqu'à demain *ſervice*

Marſhal Turenne *would* not take any thing from
maréchal de *prendre* *rien*
merchants upon truſt, leſt they might loſe a part of
marchand à crédit de peur que 158 *perdre partie* f *en*
it, ſhould he be killed in the battle.
57 *s'il* *êtoit tuer* *bataille* f

RULE 166.—*would, could*, &c.

If the irregular *would, could, ſhould*, or *might*, are not followed by two verbs, they are expreſſed in French by the imperfect, the preterite of the indicative, the conditional or the preterite of the ſubjunctive; according as the ſenſe requires it; example: *je* pouvois *le faire hier*; *je* pus *le faire autrefois*; *je le* pourrois *ſi je voulois*; *je ne crois pas que je le* puſſe; I could do it yeſterday, I could do it formerly, &c.

RULE 167.—*would, could*, &c.

If the irregular *would, could*, or *ſhould*, are followed by two verbs, the ſentence is ſometimes rendered by the imperfect or the conditional of *avoir*, with the participle *pu, du*, or *voulu*; and ſometimes by the conditional of *pouvoir, devoir*, or *vouloir*, and the verb *avoir* in the infinitive; example; *vous auriez* du *m'écrire, puiſque vous ſaviez mon addreſſe*;

* Would, could, ſhould, *or* might, *are not expreſſed in other caſes, and are only the mark of a tenſe, as* je parlerois, *I would ſpeak.*

you *ſhould have* written to me ſince you knew my direction.
Je pourrois *l'avoir fait auparavant*, I *could* have done it before *

I *could* have done my exerciſe as ſoon as you, if I
faire *thême* *auſſi vîte que*
would; but then it would not have been made ſo
mais *faire ſi*
well as it is. If you *would* have ſtudied French, you
bien que *ſi* *étudier François*
could have learnt it in a ſhort time when you were
apprendre *peu de tems*
in France. Cities *could* not have been built without an
ville *bâtir*
aſſembly of men.
aſſemblée

I think that if our general *would* have purſued
croire (ir) *général* *pourſuivre (ir)*
the enemy, he *might* have taken their ammunition. I
ennemi *prendre (ir)*
could have lent you two hundred pounds yeſterday, but
prêter *livre* *hier*
I do not think I could at preſent, becauſe I have
croire je le puſſe *parceque*
bought a horſe this morning.
acheter *cheval* *matin*

CHAPTER XVIII.

OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS *il faut, il y a*, &c.

RULE 168.—*il faut*, it muſt.

☞ The verb *muſt* is expreſſed in French by the impersonal *il faut*. The nominative of *muſt* becomes the nominative of the next verb, which is put in the ſubjunctive mood; example; il faut *que votre frère* vienne *ici demain*, your brother muſt come here to-morrow; il faut *qu'ils le faſſent*, they muſt do it; as if it was, it muſt that your brother come.

* *If you are at a loſs in which tenſe to put in French theſe irregular* would, could, ſhould, *&c. turn them by the verb* to be willing, to be able, *or* to be obliged, *and then put* vouloir, pouvoir, *or* devoir, *in the ſame tenſe as is the verb* to be *in Engliſh, and you will never be miſtaken.*

Children *muſt* obey their parents. Men *muſt* practiſe
enfant *obéir* 130 *pratiquer*
virtue. I *muſt* have a new hat. A woman *muſt*
vertu f *neuf* 31 *chapeau* m
have a great deal of circumſpection not to ſpeak of her-
beaucoup *retenue* *pour ne pas*
ſelf. I have ſold my houſe; I *muſt* buy another. You
vendre *maiſon* f *acheter*
muſt have a new book. They *muſt* have new ſtockings.
neuf *bas* 7
They *muſt* anſwer. You *muſt* go there.
répondre *y*

RULE 169.—*il y a*, there is.

1. The impersonals *there is*, or *there are*; *there was*, or *there were*, &c. are expreſſed in French by *il y a* for the preſent tenſe, *il y avoit* for the imperfect, *il y eut* for the preterite, *il y aura* for the future, *il y auroit* for the conditional, *il y ait* for the preſent ſubjunctive, and *il y eût* for the preterite; example;

Il n'y a *point de talent plus brillant que celui de la parole.*
There is no talent more ſhining than that of ſpeaking.

2. The impersonal *il y a* is alſo uſed, to aſk the diſtance from one place to another; then it anſwers to the words *how far*; example; *combien* y a-t-il *de Douvres à Calais?* how far is Dover from Calais?—to aſk the number of inhabitants, years, months, cities, &c. then it anſwers to the words *how many*; example; *combien* y a-t-il *de villes en Angleterre?* how many towns in England?—to aſk the time ſince ſuch or ſuch a thing happened; then it anſwers to the words *how long*; example; *combien* y a-t-il *qu'elle eſt morte?* how long has ſhe been dead?

1. There is no leſs eloquence in the tone of the
pas moins 118 *ton* m
voice, in the eyes and the geſture, than in the choice
voix f *geſte* m *que* *choix* m
of words.—1. There is in true virtue, a candour which
mot *vertu* f *candeur* f
nothing can counterfeit.—2. *How long* have you
118 *pouvoir (ir)* *contrefaire* *combien* *y a-t-il que*
been in England?—Theſe five years.—2. *How long* has
Angleterre *ans*
your father been dead?—2. *How long* have you learnt
mort *apprendre*

geography?—2. *How far* is l'Aigle from Paris?—2. *How far*
géographie *combien*
is London from Vienna?—2. *How many* inhabitants are there
Londres *Vienne* *habitant*
in France?—2. *How many* in England?—1. There is
en *Angleterre*
nothing made by the hands of men, which time does not
rien *main* *tems*
deſtroy.
détruiſe.

RULE 170.—*Diſtinction between c'eſt* and *il eſt.*

☞ 1. The perſonal *it is, it was, it will be,* &c. is uſually expreſſed by *il eſt, il étoit, il fut,* &c. when it is followed by an adjective, without a ſubſtantive; example;
It is very difficult to pleaſe every body.
Il eſt *très difficile de plaire à tout le monde*—not, *c'eſt*

2. *It is, it was,* &c. is expreſſed by *c'eſt* or *c'etoit,* when it is followed by a ſubſtantive, a pronoun, or a verb; example;
It is my brother who ſays ſo. It is you who have ſeen him.
C'eſt *mon frère qui le dit*; c'eſt *vous qui l'avez vu* *.
not, *il eſt* mon frère qui le dit, nor *il eſt* vous qui l'avez vu.

2. *It is* a certain mark of a great mind to preſerve the
marque f *eſprit* 135
ſoul from pride in proſperity, and in adverſity to ſhun
âme *orgeuil* *proſpérité* f *d' éviter*
depreſſing anxieties.—1. *It is* more glorious to conquer
glorieux 135 *vaincre*
oneſelf than an enemy.—2. It was envy which cauſed the
ſe 57 *ennemi* *envie* *cauſa*
death of Abel.—2. It is you who have ſpoken of it.—2. It
mort f *parler en* 57
is the character of a great genius to intimate many
caractère m *genie* m *exprimer beaucoup*
things in few words.—1. It is certain that men could
18 *peu* 18 *mot* *pouvoir (ir)*
not live long in ſociety without civil laws. It is late;
long-tems *ſociété* *loi* f 7 *tard*
it is time to go to bed. What o'clock is it? It is
aller *ſe coucher* *heure*
paſt ten; it is almoſt eleven.
plus de *preſque heures.*

---

* It is, *is alſo uſually expreſſed by* il eſt *or* il étoit *(and not by* c'eſt*), when it is followed by a ſubſtantive which has reference to time, as* il eſt tems de partir, *it is time to ſet out,* not *c'eſt tems de partir.*

RULE 171.—*c'eſt, ce ſont*, it is.

☞ 1. The impersonal *it is*, is expreſſed by *ce ſont* when it is followed by a ſubſtantive plural, or the pronouns *eux* or *elles* in the nominative caſe; example;

It is they who ſpeak; *it is* they who have ſeen him.
Ce ſont *eux qui parlent*; ce ſont *elles qui l'ont vu*, not, *il eſt*, nor, *c'eſt eux qui parlent*, &c.

2. The impersonal *it is*, is expreſſed by *c'eſt* in all other caſes, even before a ſubſtantive plural, or the pronouns *eux* or *elles*, if they are not in the nominative caſe; example;

It is you who ſay ſo. *It is* to them to ſpeak.
C'eſt *vous qui le dites*. C'eſt *à eux à parler*—not, *ce ſont*.

1. It is the Phœnicians who invented the art of writing,
Phœnicien *inventer* 130 *écrire*
—1. It is not thoſe who ſpeak much, who are the moſt
ceux *beaucoup*
eſteemed.—2. It is for you to obey.—2. It was to your
eſtimer *à vous* *obéir*
brothers I lent that money.—2. It is to them I ſpeak.—
frère *prêter* *argent* *eux*
1. It is your anceſtors, who by their virtue have tranſmitted
ancêtre *vertu* *tranſmettre(ir)*
you the titles you enjoy; it is they who have rendered your
titre *dont jouir* *eux* *rendre*
name great; imitate them, if you wiſh to be worthy
imiter *les* 56 *vouloir (ir)* *digne*
of their name*.
nom.

CHAPTER XIX.

SYNTAX OF ADVERBS.

RULE 172.—*Adverbs after the Verbs.*

☞ Adverbs are placed in French after the verb when it is in a ſimple tenſe, and between the auxiliary and the participle when it is in a compound one; they are never put as in Engliſh, between the nominative and the verb; example;

* *I have not put a recapitulatory exerciſe to theſe chapters, becauſe they are eaſily underſtood.*

They *never* ſay what they think.
Ils ne diſent jamais *ce qu'ils penſent.*
not, *ils ne jamais diſent.*

We *ſeldom* repent of talking little, but very often
rarement ſe repentir de parler peu ſouvent
of talking too much. Homer *ſometimes* ſlumbers in the
trop *Homère quelque fois ſommeiller au*
middle of Gods and heroes. Your exerciſe is not *well* done,
milieu *dieu* *héros* *thême* *faire*
you have made it haſtily. *Never* reproach any with
fait 57 *à la hâte* *reprocher à perſonne* *
the ſervices you do them. Courtiers *often* paſs their
m *rendre leur* 57 *courtiſan* *paſſer*
life in the hope of acquiring what they *never* obtain.
vie *eſpérance* 135 *acquérir* 74 *obtenir*
The love of earthly things is *always* accompanied with an
terreſtre bien *accompagner* 32
indifference towards heavenly. That which is made
pour les biens cæleſtes *ce qui*
with pleaſure, is *often* well made.
avec plaiſir

RULE 173.—*Place of Adverbs.*

The adverbs of *time*, and thoſe which govern a noun after them, are however uſually placed after the participle; example;

Il a agi conformément *à ſes principes.*
He has acted conformably to his principles.
not, *il a conformément agi à ſes principes.*

If you had acted conformably to reaſon and juſtice,
agir *conformément* *raiſon* f 177
nobody would have condemned your conduct. It was
perſonne *condamner* *conduite* *faire*
very good weather this morning, and as I wanted to
tems *matin* *avoir beſoin de*
go out I have done my exerciſe haſtily. You have given
ſortir *faire* *thême* *donner*
me too much bread.
pain.

CHAPTER XX.

Of PREPOSITIONS.

RULE 174.—*Place of Prepoſitions.*

☞ The prepoſitions are always placed in French before the word which they govern, and never after, as they are ſometimes in Engliſh; example;

Pourquoi cela?
What's that for?
not, *quoi cela pour*
De *qui vous plaignez-vous?*
Whom do you complain of?

Whom do you ſpeak *to?* what do you complain *of?*
qui *quoi* *ſe plaindre*
Whom ſhall I apply myſelf *to?* As magiſtrates are *above*
adreſſer me 57 *magiſtrat* *au deſſus*
the people, ſo the laws are *above* magiſtrates. We fancy
du peuple *loi* f *s'imaginer*
that the antipodes are *under* us, they think that we are
antipode *ſous* *croire (ir)*
under them, but all are *upon* the earth, for no part of
eux *ſur* *terre* f 121 *partie*
a ſurface can be *upon* another.
pouvoir (ir) *une autre.*

RULE 175.—*de à*, or *de en.*

When the prepoſitions *from* and *to* are uſed to expreſs the diſtance, or the going from one place to another, *from* is expreſſed by *de*, and *to* by *à*, if the place is a town; example;

Je vais de *Rouen* à *Caën en un jour.*
I go from Rouen to Caen in one day.

2. But *to* is expreſſed by *en* inſtead of *à* when the noun which comes after is not the name of a town, as

I go *from* houſe *to* houſe, from ſtreet to ſtreet, &c.
Je vais de maiſon en *maiſon, de ville* en *ville.*

1. I can go in one day from l'Aigle *to* Paris, and
pouvoir (ir) *jour* *et*
in two hours *from* Paris *to* Verſailles.—2. I like to travel,
heure *aimer* 136 *voyager*
I go from province *to* province, and from kingdom *to*
aller *royaume*
kingdom.—1. How far is it from London to Wincheſter,
combien y a-t-il *Londres*

and how far from Wincheſter to Saliſbury.—2. You ſpend
combien y a-t-il *paſſer*
all the day in going from houſe *to* houſe, from ſtreet *to*
à *aller* *maiſon* *rue*
ſtreet, and from place *to* place.

RULE 176.—*depuis, juſqu'à*, from, to.

When the prepoſitions *from* and *to* are uſed to expreſs a duration of time; *from* is expreſſed by *depuis*, and *to* by *juſqu'à*; example;

J'ai été malade depuis *noël* juſqu'à *pâques*.
I have been ſick *from* Chriſtmas *to* Eaſter *.

A poor ploughman, who works *from* morning *to* night,
laboureur *travailler* *matin* *ſoir*
when he is well paid for his labour, lives as content as
payer *travail* *vivre (ir)* *que*
a king. I have drank the cup *to* the dregs. I
boire (ir) *calice* m *lie* f
walk every day *from* ten *to* twelve, and I ſtudy
ſe promener *dix heures* *étudier*
from ſix in the afternoon *to* eight, ſometimes to nine.
ſix *après midi* *huit* *quelquefois* *neuf*

RULE 177.—*Prepoſitions repeated.*

☞ The prepoſitions *de*, *à*, *contre*, and *ſans*, are uſually repeated in French before every noun, pronoun, or verb, whether they are repeated or not in Engliſh; example;

He is in a ſtate of doubt, fear, and diſtruſt.
Il eſt dans un état de *doute*, de *crainte*, *et* de *défiance*.

The other prepoſitions are repeated before words of different ſignification, but not when they are pretty near of the ſame.

Foreigners take pleaſure in admiring at Amſterdam
étranger *prendre (ir)* *plaiſir* *à* *admirer* *à*
the ſingular mixture formed *by* the ridges of houſes, the
ſingulier 31 *mélange former* *toit*
tops of trees, and the flags of ſhips, which give, in
cime f *pavillon* *vaiſſeau* *donner*
the ſame place, a view *of* the ſea, the city, and the country.
vue f *mer* f *ville* *campagne* f

* *The prepoſition* to *is alſo expreſſed by* juſqu'à, *when it ſignifies* ſo far as. *Example: je pourſuiverai* juſqu'au *bout*; I will proſecute him *to* the end.

Heroes formerly ſacrificed themſelves *for* their country,
héros autrefois 172 *ſacrifier* *ſe* 57 *pays*
or their miſtreſſes, at preſent nothing is done but *for* fortune
maîtreſſe *rien* *que* f
or pleaſure.
plaiſir m

Jeſus Chriſt is come into the world *to* redeem men, and
venir *monde* 138 *racheter*
to deſtroy the empire of the devil. Charity does nothing
détruire *demon* *charité* *rien*
without conſideration and order. Our laws condemn nobody
ſans *ordre* *condamner*
without having heard and examined him.
entendre *examiner le* 60.

CHAPTER XXI.

OF THE FRENCH IDIOMS.

RULE 178.—To be *expreſſed by* avoir.

☞ The verb *to be* is expreſſed by the verb *avoir* when it is followed, 1. By a word of number, as *one, two, three, &c.* 2. By the words *hungry, dry,* or *thirſty.* 3. By the words *hot, warm,* or *cold*.* 4. By the adverb *there.* 5. By the words *in the right, in the wrong, aſhamed,* or *afraid.* 6. By *in vain.* 7. In ſpeaking of the age of a perſon, or of an animal.

EXAMPLE.

1. Il *a* ſix pieds,	*he* is *ſix feet high.*
2. *Avez*-vous faim ?	are *you hungry?*
3. *Avez*-vous froid ?	are *you cold?*
4. Il n'y *a* pas de mal,	*there* is *no harm.*
5. Vous *avez* raiſon,	*you* are *in the right.*
6. Vous *avez* beau dire,	*it* is *in vain for you to ſay ſo.*
Quel age *avez*-vous ?	*how old* are *you ?*
7. *J'ai* quinze ans,	I am *fifteen.*

* *The part of the body which is* cold *or* hot *is preceded in French by* au, à, la, *or* aux, *as, j'ai mal* au *pied.*

1. Some whales *are* a hundred feet long, their tails *are*
baleine *pied* 35 *queue*
more than twelve feet in circumference, and their fins *are*
de circonférence *nageoire*
about ſeven feet long.—1. How old *was* your father when
35 *quel age*
he died?—He *was* ſeventy; and your mother?—ſhe
mourir 150 *ſoixante-dix ans*
was almoſt eighty.—2. I do not remember to have
preſque quatre-vingt ans *ſe reſſouvenir* 135
ever *been* ſo dry as I *was* yeſterday.—3. Warm your-
jamais *ſi ſoif que* *hier* *chaufer vous*
ſelf, if you *are* cold; my feet *are* not cold, becauſe I have
56 *froid*
walked much, but my hands *are* ſo cold, that I cannot
ſi froid *pouvoir (ir)*
write.—4. There *are* ſome walks in our park which *are* three
169 *des allée* *parc*
hundred feet long.—5. You are in the wrong, and he is in
cent *tord*
the right.
raiſon.

6. It is in vain for you to aſk money from a miſer,
demander *avare*
he will never give you any.—7. How old *is* your daughter?
donner *en* 58 *quel age*
ſhe will *be* eighteen next March? I did not think ſhe
*dix-huit** *prochain* *croire qu'elle*
was more than fifteen. When we heard that your coach
de *apprendre* 150 *caroſſe*
had been ſtopped by ſome ruffians, we were afraid they
arrêter 7 *voleur* *craindre que*
would have murdered you.—3. *Are* your feet cold? No, on
ne euſſent tuer 57 *pied* *au*
the contrary, they *are* very warm; but my hands are cold.
contraire *chaud.*

RULE 179.—To be *expreſſed by* faire.

☞ The verb *to be* is uſually expreſſed by *faire*, before the words *ſoleil*, *vent*, *chaud*, *froid*, and in general when we ſpeak of the kind or diſpoſition of the weather; example;
Il fait *beau tems.*
It *is* fine weather.

---

* *The words* heure, jours, mois, an, *&c. muſt always be uſed in French after the cardinal numbers, though they are not expreſſed in Engliſh.*

Is it cold this morning?—Yes, Sir, it *is* very cold;
froid *matin* *oui* *très*
however, I do not think it *is* quite ſo cold as it *was*
cependant *croire (ir)* 159 * *ſi*
yeſterday. The time is very inconſtant, it *was* hot yeſterday,
hier *tems* *chaud*
it *is* cold to-day, it rained this morning, it *is* fine weather
aujourd'hui *a plu* *matin* *tems*
now, but perhaps it will rain again before it is night.
peut-être *pleuvra* *avant que* 158 *nuit*
If it *is* good weather to-morrow, I will go to the play;
demain *aller (ir)* *comédie*
but if it *is* bad weather, I ſhall not go. When I was in
mauvais *à*
the country, it *was* very bad weather, now I am come
campagne f *à preſent* *que*
to town, it *is* very good weather, and if I was to return
ville *je retournois*
into the country, I fear it *would be* bad weather again.
craindre 156 *encore*

RULE 180.—To be *expreſſed by* ſe porter.

☞ The verbs *to be* or *to do*, uſed in Engliſh to inquire after, or to ſpeak of the health of ſomebody, are both expreſſed in French by the reflected verb *ſe porter*; example;

Comment ſe porte *monſieur votre père?*—*il* ſe porte *très bien, Dieu merci.* How does your father *do?*—he *is* very well, thank God.

How do you *do* this morning?—I *am* very well, I
comment *matin* *bien*
thank you; and how does your ſiſter *do?*—ſhe *is* not
remercier *ſœur*
well; ſhe has been ſick for theſe two months, and I
malade *depuis* * *mois*
fear ſhe will never *be* well again; and your brothers,
craindre *jamais* *frère*
how *are* they?—the youngeſt *is* very well, but I do not
jeune *mais*
know how the eldeſt *does*, becauſe we have not
ſçavoir (ir) *aîné* *parceque*
heard of him for theſe two months; he *was* very well
entendu parler *depuis* *
when he wrote us laſt.
quand *écrire (ir)* 57 *la dernière-fois*

RULE 181—*il en eſt de*, it is with.

☞ The impersonal *it is with*, *it will be with*, &c. is

rendered in French by *il en eſt de*, for the preſent tenſe, *il en étoit de*, for the imperfect; *il en fut de*, for the preterite, &c. example;

Il en eſt de vous comme des autres.
It is with you as with other men.

It is with the diſeaſes of the heart as with thoſe
maladie f *cœur comme de celle*
of the body, ſome are real, and ſome imaginary. *It is*
les unes réel les autres imaginaire
with men of learning as with ears of corn; they raiſe their
ſcience épis bled lever la
heads while they are empty, and when they are full, they
tête vuide plein
begin to droop. *It is with* your ſon as with other
commencer à pancher fils autres
children. I do not think it *will be with* my ſon as
enfant croire 159 *fils*
it was with yours.
vôtre

RULE 182.—To have, *expreſſed by* être.

☞ The auxiliary *to have* is expreſſed in French by the verb *être* in the compound tenſes of all the reflected verbs, and alſo of the following, aller, arriver, décéder, entrer, mourir, naître, partir, tomber, venir, and their compounds; example;

Je me *ſuis* levé à ſix heures, *I* have *riſen at ſix o'clock.*
Il *étoit* arrivé avant nous, *he* had *arrived before us* *.

The Amazons *have* made themſelves famous by their
Amazone f *rendre ſe* 57 *fameux*
courage in war. If you had riſen an hour ſooner this
la guerre ſe lever plutôt
morning, you would *have* embarked with the others; if
s'embarquer
I had been awake, I would *have* riſen. Why *have* you
éveillé ſe lever
deviated from the road which you had begun to fol-
s'écarter route f *commencer à ſui-*
low?—I have often repented not to have followed your advice.
vre ſe repentir ſuivre (ir) avis

My father *has* arrived an hour ſooner than you. I
arriver plutôt

---

* *The reflected verbs are conjugated with the pronouns*, je me *for the firſt perſon ſingular*, tu te *for the ſecond*, il *or* elle ſe, *for the third*; nous nous *for the firſt plural*, vous vous *for the ſecond, and* ils *or* elles ſe *for the third.*

would not *have* come this morning, if I had not received
venir *matin* *recevoir*
a letter from you yeſterday. You would not *have* fallen
bier *tomber*
from your horſe, if you had not galloped. I *have*
de * *cheval*
walked in the garden before you were up. Why
ſe promener *avant que* *fuſſiez levé*
have you complained of me? I have got a cold this
ſe plaindre *s'enrhumer*
morning. He diſtruſts every body.
ſe défier-de

RULE 183.—*avoir mal à.*

☞ We make uſe of the verb *avoir mal* in ſpeaking of any illneſs. The part of the body affected with ſome pains is put in the dative caſe, and is conſequently preceded by *au*, *à l'*, *à la*, or *aux*, according as the gender and number requires it; example;

I have the head-ache. She has the tooth ache.
J'ai mal à la *tête*. *Elle a mal* aux *dents*

as if it was, I have a pain to the head, ſhe has a pain to the teeth; and ſo on, for other ſentences of the ſame kind.

I have a great pain in my * ſide; he has ſore eyes;
côté *mal yeux*
have you the ſtomach-ach? he has a ſore foot. My lips
eſtomac mal *pied* *levres*
are ſore; ſhe had the tooth-ache yeſterday, now ſhe has
dent *hier* *à preſent*
the head-ache; to-morrow, perhaps, ſhe will have a bad
tête *demain*
leg; when I was young, I often had the head-ach.
jambe *jeune* *ſouvent*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE.

Why do you not eat, if you are hungry? I am not
manger 178 *faim* 178
very hungry, I can wait till dinner-time, but I am
très *pouvoir attendre* *mais* 178

---

* *The poſſeſſive pronouns* my, his, our, your, &c. *which come in Engliſh before the part of the body affected with pain, are uſually left out in French as uſeleſs, and the definite article* le, la, les, *is uſed inſtead of them.*

very dry, and I will thank you for a glaſs of wine. It is
ſoif *verre* m *vin* 179
very cold to-day, it was cold yeſterday; it will be hot
froid 179 *hier* 179 *chaud*
ſoon. I am dry, he is hungry. My ſiſter is not well,
bientôt 178 *ſoif* 178 *faim* *ſœur* 180 *bien*
ſhe has not been well for theſe three weeks, ſhe has the
s'eſt 180 *depuis* *ſemaine*
head-ache to-day. At what o'clock did you riſe this morning?
183 *quelle heure* *ſe lever* 182

It is in vain for you to ſay ſo, I do not believe
178 *dire le* 57 *croire (ir)*
you. It is with my brother as with yours. How old is
57 181 *frère* *du* *vôtre* 178
your ſon?—he is almoſt nineteen; and your daughter?—
preſque dix-neuf ans *fille*
ſhe will be fifteen next Chriſtmas. What weather is it this
noël *tems* 179
morning?—it is fine weather; I hope it will be fine
matin 179 *beau* *eſpérer* 179
weather to-morrow. Why?—Becauſe, if it is fine weather,
demain *parceque* 179
we ſhall go in the country, my brother and I; but
aller (ir) *campagne* f *moi*
if it is bad weather, we ſhall ſtay at home.
179 *mauvais* *demeurer* *maiſon* f

How far is your houſe from the chapel? How old was
169 *maiſon* f *chapelle* *quel âge* 178
your father when he died? How old were you when you
quand *mourir* 150 178
married?—I was thirty; how old are you now?—I ſhall
ſe marier 178 *trente ans* 178 *à preſent*
be fifty next April.
178 *prochain Avril.*

It is in vain for us to bury ourſelves in obſcurity;
178 *s'enfoncer*
nothing protects us againſt the perſecutions of malignity;
118 *mettre à couvert des* *pourſuite* *méchanceté*
nothing ſhelters us from the darts of envy.
mettre à l'abri *traits*

What weather is it to-day? I do not know, I have
179 *aujourd'hui* *ſavoir (ir)*
not been out, but I think it is very cold; if it is cold,
ſortir *croire (ir)* 179 *froid* 179

I ſhall not go out, becauſe I fear to get a cold. I
ſortir *craindre de m'enrhumer*
never drink unleſs I am dry.
boire (ir) amoins que 158 *ſoif*

How do your children do?—they are all very well, I
comment *enfans* 180 180
thank you; and your mother?—ſhe is not well, ſhe had
remercier *mère* 180 *bien* 183
the tooth-ache yeſterday; and ſhe told me this morning
dent mal *hier* *dire* 153 *matin*
ſhe had the head-ache. Is it cold? are you cold? it is
183 *tête f mal* 179 *froid* 178 179
not cold; I am not cold. Your brother will not be well
178 *froid* 180
till he is twenty.
178 *vingt ans*

PARTIE IV.

ABREGE des PRINCIPES de la LANGUE FRANCOISE, par Demande et par Réponſe.

DIALOGUE 1.—*Sur l'Article**.

D. COMBIEN y a-t-il d'articles en François?

R. Trois, ſavoir; 1. l'article défini, *le, la, les*; 2. l'article indéfini, *un* ou *une*; 3. l'article partitif, *du, de la, des*.

D. Quand ſe ſert-on de l'article défini, *le, la, les?*

R. On s'en ſert, 1. avant tous les noms pris dans un ſens particulier ou univerſel; comme, *la* crainte *de la* mort eſt naturelle aux hommes; 2. avant tous les noms propres de provinces ou de royaumes; comme, *la* Ruſſie eſt plus grande que *la* France; cependant on le ſert ordinairement de la prépoſition *de* pour le genitif au lieu de l'article, *le, la, les*; example; je viens *de* France, du vin *de* Bourgogne.

D. Quand ſe ſert-on de l'article indéfini *un* ou *une?*

R. On s'en ſert ordinairemenent avant un nom ſingulier qui n'eſt pas ſpécifié; comme, *un* honnête homme n'a que ſa parole.

D. Quand ſe-ſert-on de l'article partitif *du, de la, des?*

R. On s'en ſert avant un nom quand on veut ſignifier un nombre, ou une portion indéterminée de la choſe dont on parle; comme, donnez-moi *du* pain, *de la* viande et *des* œufs.

D. Si un nom pris dans un ſens partitif, étoit précédé par un adjectif, ſe ſerviroit-on encore de l'article *du, de la, des?*

R. Non, alors on ſe ſerviroit de la prépoſition *de*; comme, donnez-moi *de* bon pain, *de* bonne viande et *de* bons œufs.

---

* *I have put theſe dialogues in French only, but the pupil muſt tranſlate them into Engliſh as ſoon as he is able to do it.*

D. Les articles ſont-ils déclinables en François ?

R. Oui, tous, et ils s'accordent en genre et en nombre avec leur ſubſtantif ; comme, *le* père, *la* mère et *les* enfans ſont morts.

D. Y a-t-il des circonſtances où l'on n'emploie point d'article en François ?

R. Oui, pluſieurs ; on n'emploie point d'article ; 1. avant les noms propres de perſonnes ou de villes ; comme, *Pierre*, *Londres*, *Paris*, &c.

2. Avant les noms qui déſignent la qualité, l'eſpece, ou le pays du nom qui précéde ; comme, *une montre* d'*or* ; *du vin* de *Bourgogne*.

3. Avant les noms qui ſuivent les adverbes de quantité ; comme, *beaucoup* de *pain et peu* de *viande*.

4. Avant les noms de nombre employés pour déſigner des ſouverains ; comme, *George trois*, *Louis ſeize* ; et dans quelques autres circonſtances, expliquées auparavant dans la Syntax.

N. B. Je conſidére *de* et *à* comme deux prépoſitions ; *de* eſt la marque du genitif, et *à* celle du datif.

DIALOGUE 2.—*Sur le Subſtantif.*

D. Qu'eſt-ce qu'un ſubſtantif, et qu'eſt-ce qu'un adjectif ?

R. Le ſubſtantif exprime le nom d'une perſonne ou d'une choſe, l'adjectif en exprime la qualité ; dans cet exemple : *la vertu eſt aimable*. Le mot *vertu* eſt un ſubſtantif, et *aimable* un adjectif.

D. Combien y a-t-il de nombres ?

R. Deux, le ſingulier et le pluriel ; Le ſingulier dénote une perſonne ou une choſe ; comme, *une maiſon*, *un livre* ; Le pluriel dénote pluſieurs perſonnes ou pluſieurs choſes ; comme, *des hommes*, *des jardins*.

D. Comment forme-t-on le pluriel des ſubſtantifs et des adjectifs ?

R. En ajoutant une *s* au ſingulier ; comme, *un homme*, *des hommes*, *une maiſon*, *des maiſons*.

D. N'y a-t-il point d'exceptions à cette regle ?

R. Oui pluſieurs, 1. les noms qui finiſſent en (*ſ*, *x* ou *z*) au ſingulier ont les deux nombres ſemblables ; comme, *le fils*, *les fils* ; *la voix*, *les voix*.

2. Les noms qui finiſſent en *u* précédé d'une voyelle prennent un *x* ; comme, *le jeu*, *les jeux*.

3. Les noms qui finiſſent en *al* prennent *aux* ; comme, *cheval*, *chevaux* ; *animal*, *animaux*.

D. Combien y-a t-il de genres, et comment peut-on les diſtinguer ?

R. Il y a deux genres, appelés le maſculin et le feminin ; un nom eſt au maſculin, quand il a raport aux mâles, et au feminin, quand il a raport aux femmelles.

D. Comment connoît-on le genre des choſes inanimées ?

R. Par leur terminaiſon, par exemple, les noms qui finiſſent en (*a*, *é* accentué, *i*, *o*, *u*, *age*, *ege*, *uge*, *acle*, *aire*, *aume*, *ême*, *iſme*, *ôme*, ou *oire*,) ſont preſque tous maſculins ; ceux au contraire qui finiſſent en (*té*, *ée*, *ie*, *ue*, *ace*, *ance*, *ence*, *ade*, *ude*, *lle*, *mme*, *nne*, *rre*, *sse*, ou *tte*,) ſont preſque tous feminins.

Preſque tous les noms qui finiſſent avec une conſonne ſont maſculins, à moins qu'ils n'aient pour finale (*x*, *eur*, *ion* or *ſon.*)—Cette regle contient pluſieurs mille mots, et n'a que peu d'exceptions.

DIALOGUE 3.—*Sur l'Adjectif.*

D. Les adjectifs ſont-ils déclinables en François ?

R. Oui, tous ; et ils s'accordent en genre et en nombre avec leurs ſubſtantifs ; comme, un *grand* homme, une *grande* femme ; de *grands* ſoldats, de *grandes* armées, &c.

D. Comment forme-t-on le feminin des adjectifs ?

R. En ajoutant un *e* muet à la terminaiſon maſculine ; comme, *grand*, *poli*, *aimé*, maſculin ; *grande*, *polie*, *aimée*, feminin.

D. N'y a-t-il point d'exceptions à cette regle?

R. Oui, pluſieurs.—1. Les adjectifs qui finiſſent en *e* muet au maſculin ne changent pas au feminin; comme, un homme *ſage*, une femme *ſage*.

2. Ceux qui finiſſent en *c* changent cette finale en *che* ou *que* pour le feminin; comme, un habit *blanc*, une robe *blanche*; le bien *public*, une choſe *publique*.

3. Ceux qui finiſſent en *f* au maſculin changent *f* en *ve* pour le feminin; comme, un livre *neuf*, une maiſon *neuve*.

4. La plupart de ceux qui finiſſent en *eur* ou *x* au maſculin, changent leur final en *ſe* pour le feminin; comme, un *chanteur*, une *chanteuſe*; un homme *jaloux*, une femme *jalouſe*.

5. Ceux qui finiſſent en *el*, *eil*, *ul*, *an*, *ien*, *on*, *as*, *ais*, *os*, *et* ou *ot* au maſculin doublent la conſonne finale, et prennent un *e* pour le feminin; comme, un homme *cruel*, une femme *cruelle*.

Il y a encore quelques autres exceptions qui ſont marquées au commencement de ce livre.

D. D'où forme-t-on les comparatifs?

R. Des adjectifs, en mettant les mots *plus* ou *moins* avant eux; comme, *ſage*, *grand*, adjectifs; *plus ſage*, *moins grand*, comparatifs.

D. D'où forme-t-on les ſuperlatifs?

R. Des comparatifs, en mettant *le*, *la*, ou *les*, avant *plus* ou *moins*; comme, *plus ſage*, *moins grand*, comparatifs; le *plus ſage*, le *moins grand*, ſuperlatifs.

DIALOGUE 4.—Sur les Pronoms.

D. Combien y a-t-il de ſortes de pronoms?

R. Six, ſavoir les pronoms (*perſonnels*, *poſſeſſifs*, *démonſtratifs*, *relatifs*, *interrogatifs* et *indéterminés*).

1. *Pr. Perſonnels.*—*D.* Qu'entendez-vous par les pronoms perſonnels?

R. J'entends ceux qui repréſentent des perſonnes; comme, *je*, *tu*, *il* ou *elle*; *nous*, *vous*, *ils* ou *elles*; ces pronoms ſervent à conjuguer les verbes; comme, *je parle*, *tu parles*, *il parle*, *nous parlons*, *vous parlez*, *ils parlent*.

D. Comment exprimez-vous ces pronoms dans les autres circonſtances?

R. S'ils ſont gouvernés par un verbe, on les exprime ordinairement par *me*, *te*, *nous*, *vous*, *lui*, *leur*, pour le datif; et par *me*, *te*, *nous*, *vous*, *le*, *la*, *les*, pour l'accuſatif; comme, il *me* parle, je *le* connois.

D. Ces pronoms ſe mettent-ils avant ou après le verbe qui les gouverne?

R. On les met après, quand le verbe eſt à l'impératif affirmatif; comme, parlez-*nous*, voyez-*les*; on les met avant dans tous les autres cas; comme, il *nous* parle, il *les* voit, ils *le* connoiſſent.

D. N'y a-t-il point d'autres pronoms perſonnels?

R. Il y a encore *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *eux* ou *elles*, dont on ſe ſert après une prépoſition, ou quand ils ſont joints à un autre nom ou pronom par une conjunction; comme, je le ferai pour *eux*; *lui* ou *moi* nous y irons.

2. *Pr. Poſſeſſifs.*—*D.* Qu'entendez-vous par les pronoms poſſeſſifs?

R. J'entends ceux qui déſignent la propriété ou la poſſeſſion; tels ſont.

mon,	ma,	mes,	*my*;	notre,	nos,	*our*.
ton,	ta,	tes,	*thy*;	votre,	vos,	*your*.
ſon,	ſa,	ſes,	*his*;	leur,	leurs,	*their*.

D. N'y a-t-il point d'autres pronoms poſſeſſifs?

R. Oui, il y a encore les pronoms disjonctifs.

m. ſing.	f.	m. pl.	f.
le mien,	la mienne;	les miens,	les miennes.
le tien,	la tienne;	les tiens,	les tiennes.
le ſien,	la ſienne;	les ſiens,	les ſiennes.
le nôtre,	la nôtre;	les nôtres,	*alike*.
le vôtre,	la vôtre;	les vôtres,	
le leur,	la leur;	les leurs,	

D. Quelle différence y a-t-il entre ces pronoms?

R. Les pronoms conjonctifs *mon*, *ton*, *ſon*, &c. s'emploient avant un ſubſtantif qui ſuit; les pronoms disjonctifs *le mien*, *le tien*, *le ſien*, &c. s'emploient au contraire par rapport à un ſubſtantif qui précéde; comme, j'ai perdu *mon* livre, prêtez-moi *le vôtre*.

D. Ces pronoms ſont-ils déclinables?

R. Oui, tous; et ils s'accordent en genre et en nombre avec le ſubſtantif auquel ils ſe raportent; comme, *mon* frère eſt ſavant, et *le ſien* auſſi; *ma* ſœur eſt mariée, *la ſienne* ne l'eſt pas.

D. N'y a-t-il point d'exceptions?

R. Oui, pour rendre la prononciation plus douce, nous employons les pronoms maſculins, *mon*, *ton*, *ſon*, avant un nom feminin, quand il commence par une voyelle ou par une *h* muete; comme, *mon* âme, *ſon* hiſtoire; et non pas *ma âme*, *ſa hiſtoire*, qui auroient un ſon déſagréable.

D. Employez-vous quelquefois ces pronoms en François ſans qu'ils le ſoient en Anglois?

R. Oui, nous les employons toujours quand nous parlons à nos parens; comme, où êtes-vous, *ma* fille?—me voici, *mon* père; where are you, daughter?—here I am, father.

3. *Pr. Demonſtratifs.*—*D.* Qu'entendez-vous par les pronoms démonſtratifs, et combien y en a-t-il?

R. J'entends ceux qui montrent pour ainſi dire au doigt la perſonne ou la choſe dont on parle; il y en a trois qui ſont, 1. *ce* or *cet*, maſculin; *cette*, feminin; *ces*, pluriel; qu'on emploie avant un ſubſtantif; comme, *ce* jardin, *cet* oiſeau, *cette* maiſon, *ces* enfans.

2. *Celui-ci* ou *celle-ci*, *ceux-ci* ou *celles-ci*, qu'on emploie par raport au ſubſtantif le dernier nommé, et *celui-là* ou *celle-là*, *ceux-là* ou *celles-là*, qu'on emploie par raport au premier ſubſtantif; comme, le corps perit, l'âme eſt immortelle, cependant nous prenons ſoin de *celui-là*, et nous negligeons *celle-ci*.

3. *Ceci* ou *cela*, qui ſont toujours maſculins, n'ayant raport à aucun ſubſtantif; comme, *ceci* eſt bon, *cela* eſt mauvais; non pas *ceci eſt bonne*, *cela eſt mauvaiſe*.

4. *Pronoms Relatifs et Interrogatifs.*—*D.* Quels ſont les pr. relatifs et interrogatifs?

R. Les pronoms relatifs ſont (*qui*, *que*, *dont*, *lequel*, *laquelle*, *leſquels*, *leſquelles*); et les interrogatifs ſont (*qui*, *que*, *quoi*, *lequel*, *laquelle*), &c.

D. Quelle différence y a-t-il entre les pronoms relatifs et interrogatifs?

R. La voici: 1. Les pronoms relatifs ſe rapportent à un nom qui précéde; comme, *l'homme qui* parle; les interrogatifs au contraire ſe rapportent à un nom qui ſuit; comme, *qui* eſt là?—votre frère.

2. Dans les pronoms relatifs, *qui* s'emploie pour toutes

ſortes d'objets au *nominatif* et *que* à l'accuſatif; comme, l'écolier *qui* étudie; l'écolier *que* j'ai vu. Dans les pronoms interrogatifs au contraire, *qui* a toujours raport aux perſonnes, et *que* aux choſes; comme, *qui* avez-vous envoyé?—mon *frère*. *Que* demandez-vous?—de *l'argent*.

3. Dans les pronoms relatifs, on ſe ſert de *dont* pour le genitif; comme, la femme *dont* je parle, eſt belle; on ſe ſert de *qui* dans les pronoms interrogatifs; comme, *de qui* parlez-vous?—de votre frère.

DIALOGUE 5.—Sur les Négations.

D. Comment exprimez-vous en François les négations Angloiſes?

R. 1. *Not*, s'exprime par, ne & pas. 2. *Never* par, ne & jamais. 3. *Nothing* par, ne & rien. 4. *Nobody* par, ne & perſonne. 5. *No* par, ne & aucun. La particule *ne* ſe met toujours avant le verbe; exemple;

1. Je *ne* le connois *pas*,	*I do not know him.*
2. Je *ne* lui parlerai *jamais*,	*I will never ſpeak to him.*
3. Je *ne* vois *rien*,	*I ſee nothing.*
4. *Perſonne ne* vous aime,	*Nobody loves you.*
5. Je *n'*ai *aucuns* livres,	*I have no books.*

D. Employez-vous quelque fois la particule *ne* en François, ſans qu'il y ait de négations en Anglois?

R. Oui. 1. Preſque toujours avant le verbe qui ſuit un comparatif. 2. Après les verbes *craindre*, *apprêhender*, *avoir peur*, & *empêcher*. 3. Après les conjonctions *amoins que*, *de peur que*, *de crainte que*; exemple;

1. Il eſt plus ſavant que je *ne* croyois,	*he is more learned than I thought.*
2. Je crains qu'il *ne* vienne,	*I fear he will come.*
3. Je ne le ferai pas, amoins que vous *ne* m'aidiez,	*I will not do it, unleſs you help me.*

DIALOGUE 6.—Sur les Interrogations.

D. Où mettez-vous le nominatif du verbe dans une phraſe interrogative?

R. Si le nominatif eſt un de ces pronoms *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles, ce,* ou *on,* il ſe met après le verbe; comme, parle-t-*il?* viendront-*elles?* Si la nominatif eſt un ſubſtantif, il ſe met avant le verbe; mais alors on met après un des pronoms *il* ou *elle, ils* ou *elles,* comme s'il n'y avoit pas de nominatif auparavant; exemple; votre *père* eſt-*il* à la maiſon? vos *ſœurs* ſe portent-*elles* bien?

D. Comment exprimez-vous les différentes ſortes d'interrogations Angloiſes?

R. 1. Celle qui montre de la ſurpriſe s'exprime par *eſt-ce que.* 2. Celle qui demande le ſuffrage des autres pour appuyer ce qu'on dit s'exprime par n'*eſt-ce-pas.* 3. Celle par laquelle on demande à qui appartient telle ou telle choſe que l'on montre, s'exprime par *eſt-ce là,* ou *ſont-ce là,* ſi la phraſe eſt affirmative, et par *n'eſt-ce pas là,* ou *ne ſont-ce pas là,* ſi elle eſt négative; exemple;

1. Eſt-ce qu'il pleut?	*it does not rain, does it?*
2. Nous avons vu le roi n'eſt-ce pas?	*we have ſeen the king, have we not?*
3. Eſt-ce là votre maiſon? Ne ſont-ce pas là vos chevaux?	*is that your houſe?* *are not theſe your horſes?*

DIALOGUE 7.—Sur les Verbes.

D. Les verbes s'accordent-ils avec leur nominatif?

R. Oui, en nombre et perſonne. Exemple; c'eſt *moi* qui lui *ai* parlé; c'eſt *vous* qui *êtes* le plus fort.

D. Quand il y a deux verbes de ſuite ſans conjonction, ni nominatif entre eux, dans quel tens met-on le dernier?

R. On le met au participe après les verbes auxiliaires *avoir* et *être*; comme, jai *parlé*, je ſuis *fatigué*; on le met à l'infinitif après les autres verbes; comme, venez me *voir*; voulez-vous *écrire*.

D. Les gérondifs ſont-ils déclinables en François?

R. Oui, quand ils précédent le gérondif en Anglois, mais non pas quand ils le ſuivent; ainſi nous diſons, une preuve *convainquante*, declinable, *a convincing proof*; et une preuve *convainquant* tout le monde, indeclinable, *a proof convincing every body*.

D. Quand les participes ſont-ils déclinables?

R. 1. Quand ils ſont placés immédiatement après un ſubſtantif; comme, un homme *eſtimé*, une femme *eſtimée*. 2. Ordinairement après le verbe *être*; comme, votre frère eſt *marié*, votre ſœur eſt *mariée*. 3. Après le verbe *avoir*, quand le participe ſe rapporte à un nom ou à un pronom antécédent; comme, la *maiſon* que j'ai *achetée* eſt neuve.

Le participe eſt toujours indéclinable, quand il gouverne un ſubſtantif après lui; comme, j'ai *acheté* une maiſon neuve, non, j'ai *achetée*; ou quand il eſt ſuivi d'un infinitif; comme, elle m'a *dit* de venir, non, *elle ma dite*.

D. Comment peut-on diſtinguer quand un verbe doit être mis à l'imparfait ou au préterit de l'indicatif?

R. On met le verbe à l'imparfait quand il exprime une choſe habituelle; comme, *quand j'étois jeune* j'allois *tous les jours à la chaſſe*; et auſſi quand il déſigne une choſe qui ſe faiſoit dans un tems ſpécifié; comme, *j'écrivois* quand vous êtes venu.

Le verbe ſe met au prétérit quand il exprime un fait ou un événement particulier, arrivé dans un tems éloigné au moins d'un jour; comme, Cæſar *fut* tué dans le ſénat. La révolution Françoiſe commença en 1789.

D. Quand faut-il mettre le verbe au ſubjonctif?

R. Quand il eſt précédé: 1. Par un ſuperlatif. 2. Par un nombre ordinal; tel que le premier, le ſecond, le troiſième, &c. 3. Par les pronoms indéterminés perſonne, aucun, pas un,

ou rien. 4. Par un verbe employé interrogativement ou négativement. 5. Par un verbe qui exprime un doute ou une crainte; un désir ou un commandement. 6. Par une conjonction qui désigne quelque crainte ou doute; comme, *de peur que*, *à moins que*, &c.

EXEMPLE:

1. Il est le plus savant que, je *connoisse*, subj.
2. Vous êtes le premier homme que *j'aie* vu ici.
3. Je ne connois personne qui *veuille* le faire.
4. Je ne crois pas qu'il *vienne* aujourd'hui.
   Croyez-vous qu'ils le *fassent* cette semaine.
5. Je crains que mon père ne *soit* mort.
6. Amoins qu'il ne *vienne*, je n'y irai pas.

N.B. Les verbes de ces exemples qui sont en lettres italiques, sont au subjonctif.

FINIS.

Printed by S. FISHER, No. 10, St. John's Lane, Clerkenwell.

BOOKS
PRINTED FOR AND SOLD BY
T. HURST.

1. A NEW UNIVERSAL FRENCH GRAMMAR; being an Accurate Syſtem of French Accidence and Syntax, on an improved Plan. By NICHOLAS HAMEL, the ſecond Edition, improved, Price 3s.
2. FRENCH and ENGLISH DIALOGUES upon ſeveral Subjects; adapted for the Uſe of Schools. By LEWIS CHAMBAUD, the fifth Edition, reviſed, with great Improvements, by NICHOLAS HAMEL. Price 1s. 6d.
3. SENTIMENTAL BEAUTIES from the Writings of Dr. BLAIR; ſelected with a View to refine the Taſte, rectify the Judgment, and mould the Heart to Virtue, the fourth Edition, with a Portrait. Price 4s.
4. The BEAUTIES of SAURIN; being ſelect and intereſting Paſſages extracted from the Sermons of that juſtly celebrated Divine; with Memoirs of his Life and Writings, and a Sermon on the Difficulties of the Chriſtian Religion, never before tranſlated. By the Rev. D. RIVERS. Price 3s.
5. The BEAUTIES of STERNE; including many of his Letters and Sermons, all his Pathetic Tales, Humourous Deſcriptions, and moſt diſtinguiſhed Obſervations on Life, the 13th Edition, with ſeveral Plates. Price 4s.
6. BEAUTIES of STURM, in Leſſons on the Works of God, and of his Providence, rendered familiar to the Capacities of Youth. By ELIZA ANDREWS. Price 3s. 6d.
7. The BEAUTIES of HISTORY; or PICTURES of VIRTUE and VICE: drawn from Real Life; deſigned for the Inſtruction and Entertainment of Youth. By L. M. STRETCH, M. A. tenth Edition. Price 3s. 6d.
8. The DOMESTIC INSTRUCTOR; ſelected principally from celebrated Authors, with Original Pieces; enriched with ſixty Wood Cuts, after the Manner of BEWICK. By J. B. WEBSTER. Price 3s. 6d.
9. ELEMENTS of GEOGRAPHY; expreſsly deſigned for the Uſe of Schools. By the Rev. HENRY ST. JOHN BULLEN, M. A. Price 3s. 6d.

Alſo may be had, adapted to the above Work, a Set of Outline Maps, intended as Trial Exerciſe, to be filled up by Pupils in Geography. Price 1s.

10. SKETCHES from NATURE; taken and coloured in a Journey to Margate: publiſhed from Original Deſigns. By GEORGE KEATE, Eſq. fourth Edition, 2 vol. 12mo. Price 6s.
11. POEMS on VARIOUS SUBJECTS; ſelected to enforce the Practice of Virtue. By THOMAS TOMKINS. Price 2s. 6d.
12. POETICAL BEAUTIES of MODERN WRITERS. Uniform with the above. Price 2s. 6d.

13. The **WORKS** of **ALEXANDER POPE**, Esq. in 8 vols. 18mo. complete, with his last Corrections, Additions, and Improvements, together with his Notes as they were delivered to the Editor, a little before his Death. Price 20s.

14. The **COMPLAINT**; or **NIGHT THOUGHTS** on **LIFE, DEATH,** and **IMMORTALITY.** To which is added, a **PARAPHRASE** on Part of the **BOOK** of JOB, and a **POEM** on the **LAST DAY.** By EDWARD YOUNG, L. L. D. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

15. **HORÆ LYRICÆ.** Poems chiefly of the Lyric Kind, in three Books. By J. WATTS, D. D. a good Edition. Price 3s. 6d.

16. **A VOYAGE ROUND THE WORLD**; which was performed in the Years 1785, —6, —7, and —8, by M. De la Peyrouse; abridged from the Original French Journal. To which are added a Voyage from Manilla to California, by Don Antonio Maurelle, and an Abstract of the Voyages and Discoveries of the late Capt. G. Vancouver. Embellished with four Engravings, 1 vol. 12mo. Price 4s. 6d. boards.

17. **STUDIES of NATURE.** Translated from the French of JAMES HENRY BERNARDIN DE ST. PIERRE, in 3 vols. 8vo. Price 21s. boards.

18. The **BRITISH PROSE MISCELLANY.**

To please the Fancy,
And improve the Mind.

1 vol. 12mo. Price 3s. sewed.

BRITISH MUSEUM 30 61 AUG

19. The **BRITISH POETICAL MISCELLANY.** Printed uniform with the above. Price 3s. sewed.

---

20. A New, Correct, and Enlarged Edition of **CROXALL's FABLES OF ÆSOP,** with **INSTRUCTIVE APPLICATIONS.** Price 3s. 6d.

The acknowledged Utility of Æsop's Fables in the Education of Youth, as well as the Entertainment his moralising Way of Writing affords, intirely removes the Necessity of expatiating any further upon what is too plain to need pointing out; but, of the present Edition, a few Words may not be amiss to shew the peculiar advantages it offers to the Public, over and above those which have preceded it. S. Fisher, *therefore, respectfully informs the Public, that he has* enlarged *the Preface considerably,* added *a complete Life of Æsop, accompanied with a* List *of the various Editions which this ancient Classic has gone through, both in the Original as well as Translations, with FORTY-FOUR FABLES* more *than* CROXALL *published, and ornamented it with* Twenty-five *Plates, divided into Compartments, illustrating* Two hundred and Fifty *Subjects in the Book, and which* S. Fisher *presumes will be considered equal at least to Wood Cuts. The Paper upon which the Book is printed, is far superior to what has been used before for a School Book.*